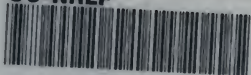


UC-NRLF



QB 306 135



Berkeley ~~Huff~~ Schuyf Anna Waterman.

so	eam
es	eat
et	eat
emux	eamux
etis	eat
<u>ent</u>	<u>eat</u>

intelliges	
intelliges	
"	- et
"	- eamux
"	- etis
"	- ent
-	-
-	-
-	-
-	-

Berkeley 21

Miss Belle Stewart

San Diego,

Miss Bertie Richey

Cal.

Carson City

Nevada

\* Miss Josie Cone

Red Bluff

Cal.

\* Miss Anna Simpson

Home School

Oakland

Miss Bettie Hays

Yubinda Hotel

Oakland,

\* Miss Lizzie Bodwell

Lakeville

Donner Co.

Miss Kate White

Cal.

Shopton

Box 232.

Cal



*San Bernardino  
California*

NEW EDITION OF 1882

---

A  
*Abie J. Waterman*  
LATIN PRIMER

*San Bernardino*  
INTRODUCTORY TO GILDERSLEEVE'S LATIN SERIES

*California*  
BY  
B. L. GILDERSLEEVE, PH. D. (GÖTT.), LL. D.,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY, BALTIMORE ;

LATE PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA

*Horne School*

REVISED BY THE AUTHOR AND

CHAPMAN MAUPIN, M. A.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK IN THE BALTIMORE CITY COLLEGE

*Oakland*

NEW YORK:

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

1882

- (1) The importance of choosing a subject.
- (2) How to obtain a subject.
- (3.) The qualities of a good subject.
4. The relation of the subject to the writer.
  - i.) The relation of the subject to the occasion.
  - ii.) Adapting a subject.
  - iii.) The statement of a subject.

COPYRIGHT,  
1875, 1892,  
BY UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY.

\*\*608

L D C.

Add'l  
GIFT

PA2087

G543

1882

Educ.

Library

## PREFACE.

---

MAXIMUM of Forms, Minimum of Syntax, Early Contact with the Language in Mass—these are the principles which have guided me in the construction of the Primer, and practical familiarity with the needs of beginners in a kindred department convinces me that the principles are correct, however faulty the application may be.

These closing words of the Preface to the first edition of this little book may fitly open the Preface of the revision. The principles of the old Primer are the principles of the new. Though I have had little opportunity of putting the Primer to a practical test in my own instruction, I have not only had the advantage of frank criticism from competent scholars, but I have associated with myself an experienced and observant teacher of Latin, who has used the Primer for years, and who has abundantly made up for my lack of personal acquaintance with the difficulties which beginners have found in the style and method of the first edition. We have tried to simplify the expression, to reduce the bulk of the material, and to distribute the exercises of the Primer in accordance with the needs of young students ; and if these modifications should give the Primer new life and extended usefulness, the result will be due in large measure to the suggestions, the criticisms, and the faithful and active help of Professor MAUPIN.

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE.

BALTIMORE, *July*, 1882.

# CONTENTS.

—:o:—

## PART I.

<p>I. Pronunciation ..... 7</p> <p>II. Classification of Words. 10</p> <p>III. Nouns, Genders, Cases. 12</p> <p>IV. The Declensions..... 15</p> <p>V. First Declension..... 16</p> <p>VI. Second Declension..... 18</p> <p>VII. Second Declension (continued)..... 20</p> <p>VIII. Declension of Adjectives in <b>-us, -a, -um</b> ..... 21</p>	<p>IX. Subject — Predicate— Verb <b>Sum</b>..... 22</p> <p>X. Conjugations — First Conjugation..... 26</p> <p>XI. Third Declension—Liqu- id Stems..... 31</p> <p>XII. Liquid Stems (contin- ued)..... 35</p> <p>XIII. Second Conjugation.... 37</p> <p>XIV. Sibilant Stems of Third Declension..... 42</p> <p>XV. Third Conjugation..... 44</p>	<p>XVI. Mute Stems of Third Declension..... 49</p> <p>XVII. Vowel Stems of Third Declension..... 52</p> <p>XVIII. Adjectives of Third De- clension..... 56</p> <p>XIX. Comparison of Adjec- tives ..... 58</p> <p>XX. Fourth Declension.... 63</p> <p>XXI. Fifth Declension..... 65</p> <p>XXII. Fourth Conjugation.... 66</p>
---	---	--

## PART II.

<p>XXIII. Review of First and Sec- ond Declensions..... 70</p> <p>XXIV. Conjugation of <b>Sum</b>— First Conjugation (finished)..... 72</p> <p>XXV. Syntax of the Subjunc- tive Mood..... 76</p> <p>XXVI. Pronouns—Subjunctive Mood (continued).... 79</p> <p>XXVII. Subjunctive Mood (con- tinued)..... 81</p> <p>XXVIII. Second Conjugation.... 83</p> <p>XXIX. Second Conjugation (continued)..... 87</p> <p>XXX. Third Declension — Rules of Gender.... 89</p> <p>XXXI. Prepositions..... 92</p> <p>XXXII. Third Declension — Third Conjugation (reviewed)..... 94</p>	<p>XXXIII. Third Conjugation— Formation of Perfect. 96</p> <p>XXXIV. Third Conjugation — Formation of Perfect (concluded)..... 102</p> <p>XXXV. Third Conjugation— Passive..... 105</p> <p>XXXVI. Change of Conjuga- tions..... 109</p> <p>XXXVII. Fourth Conjugation.... 111</p> <p>XXXVIII. Pronouns..... 113</p> <p>XXXIX. Pronouns (continued).. 116</p> <p>XL. Pronouns (continued).. 118</p> <p>XLI. Pronouns (continued).. 120</p> <p>XLII. Questions..... 122</p> <p>XLIII. Deponent Verbs..... 124</p> <p>XLIV. Imperative..... 129</p>	<p>XLV. Adverbs ..... 131</p> <p>XLVI. Numerals..... 134</p> <p>XLVII. Numerals (continued).. 137</p> <p>XLVIII. Irregular Verbs..... 139</p> <p>XLIX. Whither? Whence? Where?..... 145</p> <p>L. Accusative and Infini- tive—Relative Clauses 148</p> <p>LI. Sentences of Result.... 151</p> <p>LII. Supine Stems..... 154</p> <p>LIII. Infinitive..... 158</p> <p>LIV. Gerund and Gerundive. 159</p> <p>LV. Ablative Absolute..... 162</p> <p>Reading Lessons..... 166</p> <p>Latin-English Vocabu- lary..... 181</p> <p>English-Latin Vocabu- lary..... 199</p>
--	--	--

# LATIN PRIMER.

---


## PART I.

### I. PRONUNCIATION.

**1. Alphabet :** THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no W.

**2. Vowels :** The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, and (in Greek words only) y ; and are divided into :

<i>long,</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	—
<i>short,</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	)
<i>common, i. e.,</i>	sometimes <i>short,</i> and sometimes <i>long,</i>									≡
	“ <i>long,</i>			“			“ <i>short,</i>			≡

 In this book the long and common vowels are marked, the short only when there is special reason.

### 3. Sounds of the Vowels :\*

$\bar{a}$ = a in father.	$\bar{o}$ = o in bone.
$\bar{e}$ = e in prey.	$\bar{u}$ = oo in moon.
$\bar{i}$ = i in caprice.	$\bar{y}$ = u in s $\acute{u}$ r (French).

REMARKS.—1. **Y** is made by putting the mouth in the *oo* position and saying *ee*.

2. The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the

---

\* English Method : The letters are sounded as in English, for instance : *c* is pronounced as *s* before *e, i, y, æ* and *œ* ; elsewhere like *k*.

EXCEPTIONS : I. Final *a* is pronounced like *a* in *ah*.

Other final vowels have the long sound.

II. *Es* final is pronounced as in *sees*.

III. *Os* at the end of plural words is pronounced as in *dose*.

IV. *Ch* has the sound of *k*.

V. *G* has the sound of *j* before *e, i, y, æ* and *œ*.

long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents. *Part, pet, pēt, obey, cook, may serve for the shorts. The short y = u in sur (Fr.).*

### EXERCISE.

- |    |                   |                  |
|----|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. | ā : dā, flā, stā. | ō : dō, nō, stō. |
|    | ē : dē, flē, nē.  | ū : tū, nū, rū.  |
|    | ī : mī, nī, sī.   | ȳ : mȳ, nȳ, grȳ. |
2. ā and ǎ : cā-lō, ca-lō ; cā-nō, ca-nō ; cā-rō, ca-rō.  
 ē and ě : lē-gō, le-gō ; vē-nī, ve-nī ; sē-de, se-dē.  
 ī and ĭ : nī-sī, ni-si ; sī-tis, si-tis ; fī-de, fi-dē.  
 ō and ǒ : rō-sa, ro-sa ; nō-tō, No-tō ; mō-le, mo-le.  
 ū and ŭ : ū-ter, u-ter ; fū-ris, fu-ris ; tū-ber, tu-ber.  
 ȳ and ȳ̄ : Ty-rō, Ty-rō̄ ; Hy-lē, Hy-lax ; Ly-dus, ly-ra.

#### 4. *Diphthongs (double sounds) :*

ae and oe = ae in *Graeme* or a in *fame*.

au = ou in *our*.

ei = ei in *feint* (drawled as if *fay-vent*).

eu = eu in Spanish *deuda* = *thay-oo-thah*.

ui = oui in French *oui* (more whistled than *we*).

☞ Many scholars prefer to pronounce **ae** like English *ī*, **oe** nearly like English *oi*. **Oe** is seldom found in Latin words according to the approved spelling.

### EXERCISE.

- ae : ae-ris ; fae-num ; glae-ba ; hae-rēs ; lae-na ; mae-stus.  
 oe : foe-dus ; coe-pit ; moe-ni-a ; proe-li-um.  
 au : cau-sa ; fau-stus ; lau-dō ; plau-sus ; nau-ta ; tau-rus.  
 ei : ei ; heia.  
 eu : heus ; ěheu.  
 ui : cui, hui.

**5. Consonants :** The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions :

**C** is hard throughout = **k**.

**Ch** is not a genuine Latin sound. In Latin words it is a **k** ; in Greek words a **kh** ; commonly pronounced as **ch** in German (an aspirated **h**).



**G** is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

**J** has the sound of a **y**; *jam = yam*.

**N** has a guttural nasal sound before **c, g, q**, as in *anchor, anguish*.

**Qu = kw** (nearly); before **u**, **qu = c**: *equus = ecus*.

**R** must be trilled.

**S** and **X** are always hard, as in *hiss, axe*.

**T** is hard throughout.

**V** was nearer our **w** than our **v**; still nearer the French *ou* in *oui*.

**Z** is like **dz** in *adze*.

### EXERCISE.

**c** : cae-dō ; cae-lum ; cē-dō, cě-dō ; cī-mex ; ci-nis ; cip-pus.

**ch** : 1. Grac-chus ; pul-cher. 2. Cha-rōn ; chae-re ; Chī-lō.

**g** : ge-lū ; ge-nū ; ge-rō ; ge-stum ; gib-bus ; a-git.

**j** : Jā-nus ; je-cur ; jo-cus ; ju-ba ; jū-ris ; ju-gum.

**n** : 1. An-dēs : in-de ; con-dō ; an-te ; men-te ; mon-te.

2. An-cus ; an-ceps ; an-gō ; rin-gor ; an-xius ; pin-xī.

**qu** : 1. quā, qua ; quae, que ; quī ; quō, quo-que.

2. e-quus ; ob-lī-quus ; an-tī-quus.

**r** : rā-dō ; rā-na ; rā-rus ; rē-mus ; Rō-ma ; ru-dis.

a-rō ; fe-rō ; ge-rō ; se-rō ; ō-rō ; ū-rō.

cal-car ; ju-bar ; ef-fer ; pu-er ; a-mor ; fur-fur.

**s** : ās ; aēs ; pēs ; ōs, os ; līs, cis ; jūs, mūs.

lē-gēs ; sō-lēs ; mā-nēs ; mō-rēs ; pul-tēs ; ū-sūs.

**x** : pāx, fax ; rēx, grex ; vīx, nix ; vōx, nox ; lūx, crux.

**t** : 1. tu-ba ; tū-ber, tu-ber ; tu-lī ; tu-met ; tū-tō.

2. nā-ti-ō, ra-ti-ō ; i-ti-ō ; ti-ti-ō ; nō-ti-ō ; pō-ti-ō.

**v** : 1. vā-nus ; Ve-nus ; vī-num.

2. a-vus, ac-vum ; no-vus.

**z** : ga-za ; zō-na.

**6. Syllables** : A syllable (*taking up*) is as much of a word as we take up in calling it ; it is the unit of pronunciation, and consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.



A consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: *a-mō, I love.*

Two or more consonants belong to the following vowel: *a-sper, rough; fau-stus, lucky; li-brī, books.*

EXCEPTIONS.—1. *L, m, n, r* join the preceding vowel: *al-mus, fostering; am-bō, both; an-guis, snake; ar-bor, tree;* but *mn* follows the general rule: *a-mnis, river. L, m, n, r* are called *liquids.*

2. When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first, the second to the second syllable: *cas-sis, helmet; al-lium, garlic; map-pa, napkin; an-nus, year; mit-tō, I send.*

3. Compounds are treated as if their parts were separate words: *ab-igō, I drive off; rēs-pūblica, commonwealth.*

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *ante-penult.*

## EXERCISE.

Divide into Syllables:

1. *asinus—misera—famulus—vēnātor — cicōnia — liberāvit — auricula—tribuētis—societātēs—animālia.*
2. *fabrum—sacrum—agrum—vesperāscit—vestīgia—luctārī — suspīrium — benīgnus — frūstrā — patrem — fractus — ignōminia—quiēscō.*
3. *altera—Vulcānus—philtrum—tempestās — monstrābō — longitūdō—moribundus—vehementer—ursus — superbus — fortitūdine—Alcmēna—contemnis—damnum—omnēs.*
4. *accipiter—addictus—afferō—agger—allūdō—ammentum annuō—appellō—arrōdō—altissimus—sagitta.*

☞ At first the teacher must point out parts of compounds, as: *abs-condō, abstraho, dis-cordia, Hellēs-pontus, trāns-eō.*

## 7. Quantity of Syllables:

RULE I.—A syllable is said to be long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; *ō, vae, lē-gēs, sae-vae.*

REMARK.—Every vowel sound followed by *j* is long.

RULE II.—A syllable is said to be long *by position* when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant : *ars, col-lum, di-scō, ca-stra.*

RULE III.—A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by l or r, is common : *tenē-brae.*

The mutes are: p, b, f,  
c, g,  
t, d.

The Latin groups are :

pr, br, fr; cr, gr; tr, dr; pl, fl; cl, gl.

REMARKS.—1. The syllable must *end* in a short vowel : *nāvī-fragus, mellī-fluus* ; but *ā b-rumpo, ō b-liviscor* ; in *pū-blicus*, the only bl, u is long by nature.

2. In Greek words, m and n are included under this rule : *Tē-cmēssa, Cŷ-cnus* ; and other groups occur.

RULE IV.—Diphthongs, vowels derived from a diphthong, and vowels contracted from other vowels, are long : *sævus, conclūdō* (from *claudō*), *inīquus* (from *aequus*), *cōgō* from (*coigo = con + ago*).

8. *Accentuation* : 1. Words of two syllables have the accent or stress ( ' ) on the penult :

*mān-dō, I commit ; é-quus, horse.*

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long ; on the ante-penult when the penult is short or common.

*man-dā-re, to commit ; mán-dē-re, to chew ; ín-tē-grum, entire.*

### EXERCISE.

Accentuate :

1. *molestī—culicēs—māgnopere—cruciābant—parvulum—puerum—māter—sēdula—dīlīgenter—cōnātur—īnsatiābilēs—bestiolās—flābellō—abīgere—nōlēbant—īnfēlicem—īnfāntem—relinquere.*

2. assecla—advenit—peregrē—āfuit—impetrat — improbus —alacrem—hospitem—impigrum— pūlicem — cerebrum perculit—genetrix.
3. concīdit, concidit—invenit, invēnit—effugit, effūgit—remānet, remanet—immanēs, immānēs—annōtinus—vespertīnus—exsecrō—ēmigrō—tantulus—cucūlus.

## II. CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

**9. Parts of Speech :** The kinds of words used in language are called **Parts of Speech**. The **Parts of Speech** may be arranged in four classes : I. Noun. II. Pronoun. III. Verb. IV. Particles.

I. The *Noun* includes :

1. The *Substantive*, which gives a name : *vir, a man ; Cocles, Cocles ; dōnum, a gift.*

2. The *Adjective*, which adds a quality to the substantive ; as, *bonus, good.* So *bonus vir, GOOD man ; malum dōnum, EVIL gift.*

II. The *Pronoun* points out : *tū, thou ; is, he.*

III. The *Verb* says : *vir currit, The man IS RUNNING.* ‘*Is running*’ is said of ‘*the man.*’

IV. The *Particles* include :

1. The *Adverb*, which shows *circumstances* ; as, *how, where, when : cito currit, he runs QUICKLY ; ubi es? WHERE art thou? mox veniet, he will come PRESENTLY.*

2. The *Preposition*, which shows *local relation* : *ante, before ; ante ostium, before (i. e., facing) the door.*

Out of local relations grow relations of time : *ante lūcem, before light.* Then come other relations : *ante aliōs, before others.*

3. The *Conjunction*, which shows *connexion*: *et*, *and*; *sed*, *but*; *nam*, *for*.

To these the *Interjection* or cry is often added: *Ēheu*, *Alas!*

## EXERCISE.

In the following fable point out the Parts of Speech:

**Leō et Mūs.**

Lion and Mouse.

Leō māgnus dormiēbat in silvā; prope lūdēbant mūrēs  
 Lion great was-sleeping in wood; near-by were-playing mice,  
 et incautē ūnus nāsum leōnis tetigit. Leō experrectus mūrem  
 and carelessly one nose of-lion touched. Lion roused mouse  
 corripit. Tum mūs ōrāvit eum: Dā mihi veniam, grātus  
 seizes. Then mouse besought him: grant to-me pardon, grateful  
 tibi erō. Leō multum rīdēns respondet: Ō misera bestiola,  
 to-thee I-will-be. Lion much laughing answers: O wretched little-beast,  
 quid tū mihi prōderis? Sed ignōscam tibi et dīmittam  
 what thou to-me good-wilt-be? But I-will-grant-forgiveness to-thee and I-will-let-go  
 tē, nam leōnēs sunt generōsī. Effuge. Mūs effugit. Paulō  
 thee, for lions are generous. Scamper. Mouse scampers. A-little  
 post leō, praedam quaerēs, inciderat in laqueōs. Fremē-  
 afterward lion, prey seeking, had fallen into snares. He-was-  
 bat maximē. Cito mūs, quī fremitum audīverat, accurrit.  
 roaring very-greatly. Quickly mouse, who (the) roaring had-heard, runs-up.  
 Acūtīs dentibus laqueōrum nōdōs rōdit et laqueōs solvit.  
 With-sharp teeth snares' knots it-gnaws and snares loosens.  
 Ēn, parvus mūs summō periculō liberat māgnum leōnem.  
 Lo, little mouse from-very-great danger sets-free great lion.

**10. Inflexion:** Inflexion is a change in the form of a word, corresponding to a change in its use. This change takes place chiefly in the end of a word.

The inflexion of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflexion of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

## III. NOUNS—GENDERS—CASES.

**11. Proper and Common Nouns:** Nouns substantive are either *proper* or *common*.

The *proper* noun is *proper*, or *peculiar*, to certain persons or things : **Horātius**, *Horace* ; **Neāpolis**, *Naples* ; **Padus**, *Po*.

*Common* nouns are *common* to a whole class : **dominus**, *a lord* ; **urbs**, *a city* ; **amnis**, *a river*.

**12. Genders:** 1. For the names of living creatures the gender is determined by the meaning ; for things and qualities, by the ending.

Males are masculine ; Females, feminine.

Masculine : **Rōmulus** ; **Jūppiter** ; **vir**, *man* ; **equus**, *horse*.

Feminine : **Cornēlia** ; **Jūnō** ; **fēmina**, *woman* ; **equa**, *mare*.

2. Some classes of words without natural gender have their gender determined by their meaning :

I. Winds and Rivers, Months and Mountains are *Masculine*.

II. Countries, Islands, Trees, and Cities are *Feminine*.

III. Words that cannot be declined are *Neuters*.

3. Nouns having but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of common gender.

**conviva**, *a guest* ; **dux**, *a leader*.

**13. Cases:** The Latin noun has six cases :

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).

Answers : *who ? what ?*

2. Genitive (Adjective Case).

Answers : *whose ? whereof ?*

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).

Answers : *for or to whom ?*



## 4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).

Answers : *whom ? what ?*

## 5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

## 6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).

Answers : *where ? whence ? wherewith ?*

I. The Nominative Case is used like the English Nominative.

*Luscinia* (Nom.) *cantat*, *The nightingale is singing.*

II. The Genitive Case corresponds to the English Possessive, but has a wider use. It is often to be translated by *of* and the English Objective.

*Filia rēginæ* (Gen.), *The daughter of the queen.*

It is often best translated by making a compound out of the Genitive and the word that goes with it:

*Amor suī* (Gen.), *self-love (love of self).*

*Plēnus speī* (Gen.), *hopeful (full of hope).*

III. The Dative Case is called the Giving Case, because the Person to whom a Thing is Given is put in the Dative. The Dative implies a Thing Done For or To a Person or a Thing, considered as a Person.

It is often translated by the English Objective. It is called the Case of the Indirect Object in contrast to the Case of the Direct Object—the Accusative.

<b>Māter</b> (Nom.)	<b>filiō</b> (Dat.)	<b>dōnum</b> (Acc.)	<b>dat.</b>
Mother	to-son	gift	gives.

(The mother gives her son a gift.)

The "son" is the Person interested in the giving of the gift: the "gift" is the Result of the action of the verb.

IV. The Accusative Case is the case of the Direct Object, in contrast to the Dative, which requires another object expressed or implied.

The Accusative gives :

1. The Object Directly Produced :

**Māter dat dōnum, Mother gives a gift.**

2. The Extent of an Action :

**Ambulat multum, He walks much.**

3. The Object Directly Affected :

**Rāna necat muscās, The frog kills flies.**

Nos. 1 and 2 are called *Accusatives of the Inner Object*.

No. 2 is also called the *Adverbial Accusative*.

No. 3 is called the *Accusative of the Outer Object*.

V. The Vocative or Calling Case is the case in which a Person, or Thing considered as a Person, is addressed.

It often has the interjection **Ō**, *Oh!* before it.

**Ō formōse puer, Oh! shapely boy.**

VI. The Ablative or Taking Away Case is so called ; because it is largely used to express :

1. That From Which something is Taken.

**Cervum prātō (abl.) pellit, He drives the stag from the meadow.**

Besides this use, it also serves to give

2. The Place Where :

**Librō tertiō, In the third book.**

3. Circumstance or Attendance (Wherewith).

**Multā cūrā, With much care.**

Because it is so much used with verbs, it is called the *Adverbial Case*.

EXERCISE.

Tell the cases in the fable on p. 11.

**14. Dependent and Independent Cases :** Nom inative and Vocative are called Independent Cases (*Cāsūs*



Recti); the others are called Dependent Cases or Oblique Cases (Cāsūs Obliquī).

**15. Formation of the Cases:** The cases are formed by adding an ending to a common stock called the *stem*.

In grū-s, *crane*, gru-is, gru-i, gru-em, gru-e, gru-ēs, gru-um, gru-ibus, the common part is gru-, which we call the *stem*; -s, -is, -i, -em, -e, -ēs, -um, -ibus, are the *endings* (*case-endings*).

#### IV. THE DECLENSIONS.

**16. Declensions:** There are five declensions in Latin, which are marked by the final sound of their respective stems : \*

	Stem mark.
The stems of the First Declension end in .	ā
The stems of the Second Declension end in .	ō
The stems of the Third Declension end in .	a consonant,
or the close vowels . . . . .	i and u
The stems of the Fourth Declension end in .	ŭ
The stems of the Fifth Declension end in .	e

The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called *Vowel Declensions*; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the *Consonant Declension*, i and u being semi-consonants.

#### 17. General Rules of Declension:

I. Neuter nouns have the *Nominative* and *Vocative*

---

\* The declensions are also distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular. Nouns which have -ae in the genitive sing. are of the First Declension :

-i,	Second Declension.
-is,	Third Declension.
-ūs,	Fourth Declension.
-ei,	Fifth Declension.

like the Accusative; in the Plural the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative always end in *ă*.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are alike in the Plural.

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Second Declension, when the Nominative ends in *-us*.

II. The Dative and Ablative Plural have a common form.

## V. FIRST DECLENSION.

**18. First Declension:** The stem ends in *ă*. This *ă* is lost in the ending *-is* of the Dative and Ablative plural.\*


### FEMININE.

SING.—N.	<i>mēnsa,</i>	<i>the, or a, table.</i>
G.	<i>mēnsae,</i>	<i>of the, or a, table.</i>
D.	<i>mēnsae,</i>	<i>to, for the, or a, table.</i>
Ac.	<i>mēnsa-m,</i>	<i>the, or a, table.</i>
V.	<i>mēnsa,</i>	<i>O table ! or table !</i>
Abl.	<i>mēnsā,</i>	<i>from, with, by the, or a, table.</i>
PLUR.—N.	<i>mēnsae,</i>	<i>the tables, or tables.</i>
G.	<i>mēnsārum,</i>	<i>of the tables, or tables.</i>
D.	<i>mēnsis,</i>	<i>to, for the tables, or tables.</i>
Ac.	<i>mēnsās,</i>	<i>the tables, or tables.</i>
V.	<i>mēnsae,</i>	<i>O tables !</i>
Abl.	<i>mēnsis,</i>	<i>from, with, by the tables, or tables.</i>

In like manner decline the adjective (fem.) *parva*, *small*.

*Rule of Gender.*—The gender in this declension is feminine, except when males are meant.

**19. Rule of Syntax:** The adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case.

 The adjective more commonly follows, unless stress is laid on it.

\* The Genitive Singular of the First Declension ends in *-ae*. (See p. 15.)

## V O C A B U L A R Y .

<i>Substantives.</i>		<i>Adjectives.</i>	
bestia,	<i>beast.</i>	bona,	<i>good.</i>
capella,	<i>(she) goat, kid.</i>	māgna,	<i>great.</i>
musca,	<i>fly.</i>	mala,	<i>bad.</i>
puella,	<i>girl.</i>	molesta,	<i>troublesome.</i>
rāna,	<i>frog.</i>	parva,	<i>small.</i>
rēgīna,	<i>queen.</i>	superba,	<i>proud.</i>

## E X E R C I S E S .


## I. Decline together:

Mala bestia—parva capella—superba rēgīna—musca molesta.

## II. Tell the cases of:

1. Rānam māgnam—capellā parvā—puellās parvās—rēgīnārum superbārum—muscam molestam—rēgīnā bonā—rānārum molestārum.

2. Rāna molesta (2)—puellīs parvīs (2)—puellae parvae (4)—rēgīnīs bonīs (2)—bestia mala (2)—capellae molestae (4)—muscīs molestīs (2).

 The figures show when the groups may belong to more than one case. The teacher is advised to follow the same plan in the declensions and conjugations.

## III. Translate into English:

1. Rēgīna est (*is*) superba. 2. Puella bona amat (*loves*) capellam parvam. 3. Rēgīna dat (*gives*) capellam puellae. 4. Musca est (*is*) molesta rēgīnae. 5. Malae bestiae dēvorant (*are-devouring*) bonam rēgīnam. 6. Puella rēgīnae dat (*gives*) muscās rānīs. 7. Puella bona abigit (*drives away*) muscās molestās ā (*from*) rēgīnā superbā. 8. Ō bona puella, amā (*love*) capellam. 9. Puellae rēgīnārum necant (*are-killing*) muscās. 10. Muscae sunt (*are*) molestae bestiīs. 11. Abigite (*drive away*), ō puellae, muscās ā (*from*) bestiīs bonīs. 12. Vidēte (*see*) capellās puellārum parvārum.

## VI. SECOND DECLENSION.

**20. Second Declension:** The stem ends in *ō*. The *ō* sound appears only in the Dative and Ablative Singular and in the Genitive Plural and in the Accusative Plural of masculines; and in these cases it is lengthened into *ō̄*.\*

## MASCULINE.

SING.—N.	hortus, garden.	PLUR.—horti, gardens.
G.	horti,	hortōrum.
D.	hortō,	hortis.
Ac.	hortum,	hortōs.
V.	horte,	horti.
Abl.	hortō,	hortis.

Like *hortus* decline the adjective *māgnus*, great.

## NEUTER.

SING.—N. Ac. V.	bellum, war,	PLUR.—bella, wars.
G.	belli,	bellōrum.
D. Abl.	bellō,	bellis.

Like *bellum* decline the adjective *māgnum*, great.

*Rule of Gender.*—Nouns in *-us* are masculine; in *-um*, neuter.

## 21.

## VOCABULARY.

*Substantives.*

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
agnus,	<i>lamb.</i>	collum,	<i>neck.</i>
asinus,	<i>ass, donkey.</i>	ōvum,	<i>egg.</i>
avus,	<i>grandfather.</i>	periculum,	<i>danger.</i>
equus,	<i>horse.</i>	praemium,	<i>reward.</i>
lupus,	<i>wolf.</i>	prātum,	<i>meadow.</i>
ursus,	<i>bear.</i>	vīnum,	<i>wine.</i>

\* The Genitive Singular of the Second Declension ends in *-i*. (See p. 15.)

*Adjectives.* (19)

Like *agnus* are declined:

bonus,	molestus,
māgnus,	parvus,
malus,	superbus.

Like *collum* are declined:

bonum,	molestum,
māgnum,	parvum,
malum,	superbum.

## EXERCISES.

I. Decline together:

1. Avus bonus—ursus māgnus—malus lupus—parvus agnus.
2. Vīnum bonum—praemium māgnum—māgnum periculum—parvum prātum.

II. Tell the cases of:

1. Periculī māgnī—equōs superbōs—avum bonum—lupōrum molestōrum—ave bone—praemiōrum māgnōrum—lupum māgnum.
2. Vīnō bonō (2)—equīs superbīs (2)—prāta māgna (3)—asinī molestī (3)—parvō prātō (2)—māgnīs praemiīs (2).

III. Translate into English:

1. Avus bonus dat (*gives*) māgnum praemium parvae puellae.
2. Lupus malus parvum āgnum dēvorat (*is-devouring*).
3. Ursī lupōs fugant (*are-putting-to-flight*).
4. Muscae asinō molestae sunt.
5. Puellae ōva in prātis inveniunt (*find*).
6. Ō bone ave, dā (*give*) ōvum puellae parvae.
7. Abigite (*drive-away*) lupōs ab agnīs.
8. Rēgīna avum periculō liberat (*is-freeing*).
9. Rēgīna bona avum puellae māgnō praemiō dōnat (*presents*).
10. Sagitta (*arrow*) collum equī perforat (*pierces*).
11. Vidēte (*see*) praemia avōrum bonōrum.
12. Equī perīcula nōn (*not*) timent (*fear*).



## VII. SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED).

22. *Most masculine stems in -ero drop -us in the Nominative and e in the Vocative Singular.*

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	puer, <i>boy.</i>	puerī.	ager, <i>field.</i>	agrī.
G.	puerī,	puerōrum.	agrī,	agrōrum.
D.	puerō,	puerīs.	agrō,	agrīs.
Ac.	puerum,	puerōs.	agrū,	agrōs.
V.	puer,	puerī.	ager,	agrī.
Abl.	puerō,	puerīs.	agrō,	agrīs.

## 23.

## VOCABULARY.

*Like puer.*

*Like ager.*

*Substantives.*

*Substantives.*

armiger, *armor-bearer.*  
 gener, *son-in-law.*  
 socer, *father-in-law.*  
 vir, *man.*

aper, *wild boar.*  
 faber, *carpenter.*  
 magister, *teacher.*

*Adjectives.*

*Adjectives.*

asper, *rough, harsh.*  
 liber, *free.*  
 miser, *wretched.*  
 prosper, *lucky, prosperous.*

aeger, *sick.*  
 niger, *black.*  
 piger, *lazy.*  
 pulcher, *beautiful.*

## EXERCISES.

I. Decline together :

1. Gener prosper—armiger liber—faber pulcher—magister aeger—vir piger. 2. Faber miser—gener aeger—vir liber—aper asper—magister prosper—puer niger.

II. Translate into English :

Gener fabri—socer virī—armiger generī—generum armigerī—generum prosperum fabri miserī—armigerō (2) pigerō virī pulchrī—socerōs pigerōs fabrōrum aegrōrum.

## VIII. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN

-us, -a, -um.

24.

Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
SING.—N.	bonus,	bona,	bonum.	PLUR.—bonī,	bonae,	bona.
G.	bonī,	bonae,	bonī.	bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum.
D.	bonō.	bonae,	bonō.	bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.
Ac.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum.	bonōs,	bonās,	bona.
V.	bone,	bona,	bonum.	bonī,	bonae,	bona.
Abl.	bonō,	bonā,	bonō.	bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.

Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	miser,	misera,	miserum.	miserī,	miserae,	misera.
G.	miserī,	miserae,	miserī.	miserōrum,	miserārum,	miserōrum.
D.	miserō,	miserae,	miserō.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs.
Ac.	miserum,	miseram,	miserum.	miserōs,	miserās,	misera.
V.	miser,	misera,	miserum.	miserī,	miserae,	misera.
Abl.	miserō,	miserā,	miserō.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs.

Piger, pigra, pigrum, slow, lazy.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
SING.—N.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum.	PLUR.—pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra.
G.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī.	pigrōrum,	pigrārum,	pigrōrum.
D.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.
Ac.	pigram,	pigram,	pigrum.	pigrōs,	pigrās,	pigra.
V.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra.
Abl.	pigrō,	pigrā,	pigrō.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.

25.

## VOCABULARY.

Masculine Substantives.

FIRST DECLENSION.

agricola,	farmer.
auriga,	driver.
conviva,	guest.
nauta,	sailor.
poëta,	poet.

Substantives.

SECOND DECLENSION.

discipulus,	scholar.
culter, trī,	knife.
liber, brī,	book.
cōnsilium,	counsel, advice.
vitium,	fault, vice.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

cārus, a, um,	dear.
mōrōsus, a, um,	sour (-tempered).
novus, a, um,	new.
sacer, cra, crum,	sacred.
validus, a, um,	strong.



## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Magister bonus dat (*gives*) librum novum cārō discipulō. 2. Cōnsilium agricolae mōrōsī malum est (*is*). 3. Convīva malus necat (*kills*) agricolam aegrum. 4. Nautae prosperī dant (*give*) cultrōs puerīs bonīs. 5. Socer nautae miserī dat (*gives*) cōnsilium bonum pigrō generō. 6. Poētae culpant (*blame*) agricolārum vitia. 7. Cōnsilia bonī agricolae nautās ā (*from*) vitiīs dēterrent (*deter*). 8. Rēgīna bona dat (*gives*) praemium māgnū poētae sacrō.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The strong man kills (*necat*) the farmer's driver. 2. The poet gives (*dat*) good advice to the sailor's father-in-law. 3. The teacher hides (*cēlat*) the new knives of the lazy boys. 4. My [= O!] good boy, avoid (*vītā*) the vices of bad scholars. 5. The good poet gives (*dat*) a great reward to the strong farmers. 6. The vices of bad sons-in-law are troublesome to good fathers-in-law. 7. The sour farmer scolds (*vituperat*) the lazy guests. 8. Harsh teachers frighten (*terrent*) scholars.

## IX. SUBJECT—PREDICATE—VERB Sum.

26. *Syntax*: 1. The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

**Puer flet**, *The boy weeps, is-weeping.* **Flet** is the predicate of **puer**.

2. The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

**Puer flet**, *The boy weeps, is-weeping.* **Puer** is the subject of **flet**.

3. The most simple form of the predicate is the verb, or verbal predicate, as :

**Puer flet.**

4. When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, a Copula or *coupling* is generally used to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject. Then the adjective or substantive is called the predicate, adjective predicate, substantive predicate.

The chief copula is the verb *sum*, *I am*.

SUBJECT.	COPULA.	PREDICATE.
<b>Puer</b> The boy	<b>est</b> is	<b>piger.</b> lazy.
<b>Puer</b> The boy	<b>est</b> is	<b>poëta.</b> a poet.

5. When the subject is a personal pronoun, answering to *I, thou, you*, and the like, it is commonly not expressed in Latin, unless some stress is to be laid on it :

**Piger es.**  
Lazy art-(thou).

**Ego sum maestus, tū es laetus.**  
I am sad, thou art glad.

## 6. RULES OF CONCORD.

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject { in number and person.

**Nōs** (1st Person Plural) **sumus** (1st Person Plural) **beātī.** *We are happy.*

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject { in number, gender, and case.

**Puerī** (Nom. Pl. Masc.) **sunt miserī** (Nom. Pl. Masc.). *The boys are wretched.*

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

**Sturnus** (Nom.) **erat dēliciae domini.** *The starling was the darling (lit. delights) of its master.*

27. Conjugation of *Sum, I am* :

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
SING.—1.	<i>sum, I am.</i>	SING.—1.	<i>fui, I have been, I was.</i>
2.	<i>es, thou art,</i>	2.	<i>fuisti, thou hast been, thou wast.</i>
3.	<i>est, he, she, it is.</i>	3.	<i>fuit, he has been, he was.</i>
PLUR.—1.	<i>sumus, we are.</i>	PLUR.—1.	<i>fuimus, we have been, we were.</i>
2.	<i>estis, you are.</i>	2.	<i>fuistis, you have been, you were.</i>
3.	<i>sunt, they are.</i>	3.	<i>fuērunt, they have been, they were.</i>

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
SING.—1.	<i>eram, I was.</i>	SING.—1.	<i>fueram, I had been.</i>
2.	<i>erās, thou wast.</i>	2.	<i>fuerās, thou hadst been.</i>
3.	<i>erat, he was.</i>	3.	<i>fuerat, he had been.</i>
PLUR.—1.	<i>erāmus, we were.</i>	PLUR.—1.	<i>fuerāmus, we had been.</i>
2.	<i>erātis, you were.</i>	2.	<i>fuerātis, you had been.</i>
3.	<i>erant, they were.</i>	3.	<i>fuerant, they had been.</i>

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
SING.—1.	<i>erō, I shall be.</i>	SING.—1.	<i>fuerō, I shall have been.</i>
2.	<i>eris, thou wilt be</i>	2.	<i>fuerīs, thou wilt have been.</i>
3.	<i>erit, he will be.</i>	3.	<i>fuerit, he will have been.</i>
PLUR.—1.	<i>erimus, we shall be.</i>	PLUR.—1.	<i>fuerīmus, we shall have been.</i>
2.	<i>eritis, you will be.</i>	2.	<i>fuerītis, you will have been.</i>
3.	<i>erunt, they will be.</i>	3.	<i>fuerint, they will have been.</i>

X  
IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.		SECOND.	
SING.—2.	<i>es, be thou.</i>	2.	<i>estō, thou shalt be.</i>
		3.	<i>estō, he shall be.</i>
PLUR.—2.	<i>este, be ye.</i>	2.	<i>estōte, you shall be.</i>
		3.	<i>suntō, they shall be.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. esse, *to be.*PERF. fuisse, *to have been.*FUT. futūr-um (-am, -um)-esse, *to*  
(fore) *be about to be.*

## 28.

## VOCABULARY.

PRONOUNS.	SUBSTANTIVES.	ADJECTIVES.
ego, <i>I.</i>	catulus, <i>puppy.</i>	agrōtus, <i>sick.</i> laetus, <i>glad.</i>
tū, <i>thou.</i>	cervus, <i>stag.</i>	beātus, <i>happy.</i> maestus, <i>sad.</i>
nōs, <i>we.</i>	erus, <i>master.</i>	callidus, <i>cunning.</i> moribundus, <i>dying.</i>
vōs, <i>you.</i>	sturnus, <i>starling.</i>	irātus <i>angry.</i> stolidus, <i>stupid.</i>

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Catulus est callidus. 2. Asinī sunt stolidī. 3. Ego sum magnus, tū es parvus. 4. Sumus magnī. 5. Bellum erat magnum. 6. Lupus fuit agrōtus. 7. Sturnus erat maestus. 8. Puellae fuērunt pigrae. 9. Erus erit irātus. 10. Puerī erunt lactī. 11. Erimus beātī. 12. Nōs erimus miserī, vōs eritis beātī. 13. Rāna fuerat rēgīna muscārum. 14. Este lactī, ō beātī cervī, catulus malus moribundus est.

## II. Translate into Latin:

1. Why (*cūr*) are you angry, you (*ō*) lazy boys? 2. The puppies have been sick. 3. The queen will be glad. 4. The teacher was-once [= has-been] a boy. 5. We shall be angry; you will be glad. 6. The sick teacher's bad scholars were glad. 7. The lazy boys will be miserable. 8. Be thou happy, my (*ō*) good boy. 9. The frogs will be troublesome to the sick sailors. 10. The guests had been troublesome to the sour farmer. 11. I am sick, you are well (*sānus*). 12. We have been happy.

## X. CONJUGATIONS—FIRST CONJUGATION.

29. I. *Systems of Conjugation*: There are two systems of conjugation distinguished by the stem-sign, as vowel-system and consonant-system.

1. The vowel-system includes verbs with stem in

ā: First Conjugation.

ē: Second Conjugation.

i: Fourth Conjugation.

2. The consonant-system includes verbs with stem in a consonant or u (Third Conjugation).

These four conjugations are commonly distinguished by the form of the Present Infinitive Active.

1. The First Conj. has its Pres. Inf. Act. in -āre: *amāre*, to love.
2. The Second Conj. has its Pres. Inf. Act. in -ēre: *dēlēre*, to destroy.
3. The Third Conj. has its Pres. Inf. Act. in -ēre: *emere*, to buy.
4. The Fourth Conj. has its Pres. Inf. Act. in -ire: *audire*, to hear.

II. *Tenses*: There are six tenses in Latin. 1. Present. 2. Imperfect. 3. Future. 4. Perfect. 5. Pluperfect. 6. Future Perfect.

Pres., Imperf., and Fut. answer to our Progressives. PRES. *cantō*, I am singing. IMPF. *cantābam*, I was singing. FUT. *cantābō*, I shall be singing. Perf., Pluperf., and Fut. Perf. answer to our tenses with *have* and *had*. PERF. *cantāvī*, I have sung. PLUPERF. *cantāveram*, I had sung. FUT. PERF. *cantāverō*, I shall have sung. Present, PERF., and Fut. also answer to our simple Present, PAST, and Future. PRES. *cantō*, I sing. PERF. *cantāvī*, I sang. FUT. *cantābō*, I shall sing.

## 30.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

THE STEM FORMS OF *amō*, I love.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>		
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
<i>amō</i> ,	<i>amā-re</i> ,	<i>amā-vī</i> ,	<i>amā-tum</i> ,	<i>to love.</i>

The complete paradigm of the Active Voice is given for convenience of reference. The beginner is expected to learn only the Infinitive Present, Indicative Present, and Imperfect; 2d Person Sing. and Pl. 1st Imperative.



31.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRES.

SING.—1. am-ō, *Am loving, do love,* | ame-m, *Be loving, may love.*  
 2. amā-s, | [love. amē-s,  
 3. ama-t, | ame-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-mus, | amē-mus,  
 2. amā-tis, | amē-tis,  
 3. ama-nt, | ame-nt.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was loving, loved.**Were loving, might love.*

SING.—1. amā-ba-m, | amā-re-m,  
 2. amā-bā-s, | amā-rē-s,  
 3. amā-ba-t, | amā-re-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-bā-mus, | amā-rē-mus,  
 2. amā-bā-tis, | amā-rē-tis,  
 3. amā-ba-nt, | amā-re-nt.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be loving, shall love.*

SING.—1. amā-b-ō,  
 2. amā-bi-s,  
 3. amā-bi-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-bi-mus,  
 2. amā-bi-tis,  
 3. amā-bu-nt.

## IMPERATIVE.

## FIRST.

## SECOND.

SING.—2. amā, *love thou,* | 2. amā-tō, *thou shalt love.*  
 | 3. amā-tō, *he shall love.*

PLUR.—2. amā-te, *love ye.* | amā-tōte, *ye shall love.*  
 | ama-ntō, *they shall love.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. N. amā-n-s, G. ama-nt-is, *loving.*FUTURE. amā-tūr-us, -a, -um, *being about to love.*

## 32.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

*Have loved, did love.*

- SING.—1. amā-vī,  
2. amā-vi-stī,  
3. amā-vi-t,

- PLUR.—1. amā-vi-mus,  
2. amā-vi-stis,  
3. amā-vē-runt,

## PERFECT.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Have, may have, loved.*

- amā-ve-ri-m,  
amā-ve-rī-s, X  
ama-ve-ri-t.

- amā-ve-rī-mus,  
amā-ve-rī-tis,  
amā-ve-ri-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had loved.*

- SING.—1. amā-ve-ra-m,  
2. amā-ve-rā-s,  
3. amā-ve-ra-t,

- PLUR.—1. amā-ve-rā-mus,  
2. amā-ve-rā-tis,  
3. amā-ve-ra-nt,

*Had, might have, loved.*

- amā-vi-sse-m,  
amā-vi-ssē-s,  
amā-vi-sse-t.

- amā-vi-ssē-mus,  
amā-vi-ssē-tis,  
amā-vi-sse-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have loved.*

- SING.—1. amā-ve-r-ō,  
2. amā-ve-rī-s,  
3. amā-ve-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. amā-ve-rī-mus,  
2. amā-ve-rī-tis,  
3. amā-ve-ri-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amā-re, *to love.*PERF. amā-vi-sse, *to have loved.*FUT. amā-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to love.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [amā-re], *loving.*G. ama-nd-ī, *of loving.*D. ama-nd-ō, *to loving.*Ac. [amā-re], (ad) ama-nd-um, *loving, to love.* 1. amā-tum, *to love.*Abl. ama-nd-ō, *by loving.*2. amā-tū, *to love, in the loving.*



**33. Syntax :** 1. Review Cases, **13.**

2. Rules : **A.** Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative Case, the case of the Direct **Object :**

**Magister** narrat **fābulam.**  
Teacher tells story.

**Magister** laudat **discipulum.**  
Teacher praises scholar.

**B.** The Ablative is used with Verbs of Removing :

**Puer** liberat **puellam** **periculō.**  
Boy frees girl from-danger.

When the Ablative is a living being, the preposition *ab* or *ā* is put before the Ablative ; *ab* before vowels, and *h*, *ā*, or *ab* before consonants.

**Avus** liberat **puerum** **ā dominō.**  
Grandfather frees boy from master.

**34.**

## VOCABULARY.

<i>āvolāre,</i>	<i>fly away.</i>	<i>aqua,</i>	<i>water.</i>
<i>cantāre,</i>	<i>sing.</i>	<i>aquila,</i>	<i>eagle.</i>
<i>cūrāre,</i>	<i>nurse.</i>	<i>benevolus, a, um,</i>	<i>kind.</i>
<i>dēvorāro,</i>	<i>devour, swallow.</i>	<i>cibus,</i>	<i>food.</i>
<i>dilaniāre,</i>	<i>tear in pieces.</i>	<i>faenum,</i>	<i>hay.</i>
<i>dōnāre,</i>	<i>give.</i>	<i>filius (Voc. fili),</i>	<i>son.</i>
<i>laudāre,</i>	<i>praise.</i>	<i>grātus, a, um,</i>	<i>grateful.</i>
<i>liberāre,</i>	<i>free.</i>	<i>incautus, a, um,</i>	<i>careless.</i>
<i>necāre,</i>	<i>kill.</i>	<i>luscinia,</i>	<i>nightingale.</i>
<i>postulāre,</i>	<i>demand, ask for.</i>	<i>numerus,</i>	<i>number.</i>
<i>privāre,</i>	<i>deprive of (Abl.).</i>	<i>ōstium,</i>	<i>door.</i>
<i>pulsāre,</i>	<i>knock (at).</i>	<i>servus,</i>	<i>slave.</i>
<i>verberāre,</i>	<i>flog, beat.</i>	<i>sevērus, a, um,</i>	<i>stern.</i>
<i>vituperāre,</i>	<i>scold, blame, abuse.</i>	<i>timidus, a, um,</i>	<i>timid.</i>

## EXERCISES.

**I.** Translate into English :

1. *Parva musca āvolat.* 2. *Filius bonus asinum aegrōtum cūrābat ; lupus malus ōstium pulsābat.* 3. *Rāna dēvorābit*

muscās. 4. Aquila dīlaniāvit praedam. 5. Puellae grātae laudābant bonam rēgīnam. 6. Ō servī, verberāte asinum. 7. Ō asine, cūr (*why*) vituperās catulum? 8. Cūr postulāvistis, ō puerī, novum librum? 9. (Rānae māgnū numerum muscārum necant.) 10. Puerī avum māgnō periculō liberāvērunt. 11. Magister benevolus discipulīs bonīs pulchrōs librōs, dōnābit. 12. Bonī discipulī benevolōs magistrōs amābunt.

In Latin the possessive pronouns *my, thy, etc.*, are not expressed unless they are emphatic.

## II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The horse is devouring hay. 2. The eagle was tearing-in-pieces the puppy. 3. The stern teachers will scold the lazy girls. 4. Ask-for a book. 5. You are-swallowing a fly, you (ō) careless boy. 6. The farmer frees [his] son from great danger.

B. 1. Why (*cūr*) did you kill (Perf.) the timid frogs? 2. Praise (pl.) the good boy and the good girl. 3. The nightingales are singing sweetly (*suāviter*). 4. The stern master had flogged the lazy slave. 5. The bad boy has deprived the poor (*misellus, a, um*) frog of water (Abl.). 6. Give food to the sick sailor's wretched son-in-law.

## III. 1. Tell where the following forms are found :

Liberābō—necābitis—vituperābātis—laudāverās—dēvorābimus—verberābunt—cantāverātis—dōnāte—dōnātis—laudāvistis—dīlaniāverit—vituperābimus—cantābit.

2. Of laudō, *I praise*, give—

1 P. Pl. Imperf. Ind. Act.—2 P. Sing. Fut. Perf. Ind. Act.—2 P. Pl. Imper. Act.—3 P. Pl. Perf. Ind. Act.—2 P. Sing. Pluperf. Ind. Act.—1 P. Sing. Imperf. Ind. Act.—1 P. Pl. Perf. Ind. Act.—2 P. Pl. Fut. Ind. Act.

A similar Praxis is recommended for the other conjugations.

## XI. THIRD DECLENSION—LIQUID STEMS.

**35.** *In the Third Declension the Stem ends in a consonant or in one of the vowels i and u.\**

**36.** *The Stems are divided according to their letter into Consonant Stems and Vowel Stems.*

I. The Consonant Stems are divided, as the consonants are divided, into

## A. Liquid Stems ;

*l, m, n, r are liquids.*

GEN. CASE : cōnsul-is ; hiem-is ; leōn-is ; labōr-is.

STEM : cōnsul- ; hiem- ; leōn- ; labōr.

## B. Sibilant Stems :

*s is a sibilant.*

STEM mōs-. See 51.

## C. Mute Stems :

1. *p and b are P-mutes.*

Gen. princip-is, urb-is.

2. *c and g are K-mutes.*

Gen. arc-is, rēg-is.

3. *t and d are T-mutes.*

Gen. capit-is, ped-is.

## II. The Vowel Stems are divided into :

1. *i-stems.*

Gen. colli-s.

2. *u-stems.*

Gen. gru-is.

**37.** *The sign of the Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, is s, but s is dropped after stems in l, n, r, s.*

The Nominative Singular undergoes various changes.

\* The Genitive Sing. of the Third Declension ends in -is. (See p. 15.)

The Vocative is like the Nominative. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

**38. Neuters** always form

the Nominative without the case-ending *s*,  
the Accusative and Vocative cases in both numbers like the Nominative.  
the Nominative Plural in *ă*.

I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

A.—LIQUID STEMS.

☞ For Rules of Gender, see p. 89.

1. *Liquid stems in l*.

**39. Nominative without s**, as *cōnsul*, *the consul*.

SING.—N.	<i>cōnsul</i> ,	<i>consul</i> .	PLUR.—N.	<i>cōnsul-ēs</i> ,	<i>the consuls</i> .
G.	<i>cōnsul-is</i> ,		G.	<i>cōnsul-um</i> ,	
D.	<i>cōnsul-ī</i> ,		D.	<i>cōnsul-ibus</i> ,	
Ac.	<i>cōnsul-em</i> ,		Ac.	<i>cōnsul-ēs</i> ,	
V.	<i>cōnsul</i> ,		V.	<i>cōnsul-ēs</i> ,	
Abl.	<i>cōnsul-e</i> ,		Abl.	<i>cōnsul-ibus</i> .	

2. *Liquid stems in m*.

**40. Nominative with s**. One example only : *hiem-s*,\* *winter* ; Genitive, *hiem-is* (fem.).

3. *Liquid stems in n*.

**41. Most Masculine and Feminine Stems** have Nominative Singular in *ō*, Genitive *ōnis* or *īnis*.

Neuter Stems have Nominative Singular in *-en*, Genitive *-inis*.

\* Often spelt as pronounced, *hiemps*.

MASCULINE.

FEMININE.

NEUTER.

SING.—N.	leō, <i>lion.</i>	imāgō, <i>likeness.</i>	nōmen, <i>name.</i>
G.	leōn-is,	imāgin-is,	nōmin-is,
D.	leōn-I,	imāgin-I,	nōmin-I,
Ac.	leōn-em,	imāgin-em,	nōmen,
V.	leō,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Abl.	leōn-e,	imāgin-e,	nōmin-e,
PLUR.—N.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
G.	leōn-um,	imāgin-um,	nōmin-um,
D.	leōn-ibus,	imāgin-ibus,	nōmin-ibus,
Ac.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
V.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
Abl.	leōn-ibus.	imāgin-ibus.	nōmin-ibus.

42.

VOCABULARY.

Stems in i.

sōl, sōlis (masc.), *sun.*      mel, mellis, (neut.), *honey.*

Stems in n.

1. Genitive, -ōnis.

MASCULINE.

FEMININE.

caupō, ōnis,	<i>innkeeper.</i>	admirātiō, ōnis,	( <i>wonder</i> ) <i>admiration.</i>
centuriō,	<i>centurion, captain.</i>	expectātiō,	( <i>looking forward to</i> ) <i>expectation.</i>
ligō,	<i>mattock.</i>		
pāvō,	<i>peacock.</i>	invitātiō,	( <i>bidding</i> ) <i>invitation.</i>
praedō,	<i>robber.</i>	occāsiō,	( <i>chance</i> ) <i>occasion.</i>
pūgiō,	<i>dagger.</i>	ōrātiō,	<i>speech, oration.</i>
vespertiliō,	<i>bat.</i>		

2. Genitive, -inis.

MASCULINE.

FEMININE.

homō, inis,	<i>man.</i>	fortitūdō, inis,	( <i>hardihood</i> ) <i>bravery.</i>
	pl. <i>people.</i>	longitūdō,	<i>length.</i>
nēmō,	<i>nobody.</i>	multitūdō,	<i>crowd, multitude.</i>
ōrdō,	<i>list.</i>	sōlitūdō,	( <i>loneliness</i> ) <i>solitude,</i> <i>wilderness.</i>
		imāgō,	<i>likeness, picture.</i>

Anna G. Waterman

O.K. my, you don't say 2.5

2 is too



## NEUTER.

carmen,	song, poem.
certāmen,	contest, contention.
lūmen,	light.

ambulāre,	walk.	invidus, a, um,	envious.
asportāre,	carry away.	laqueus,	noose, snare.
cēlāre,	hide.	longus, a, um,	long.
collustrāre,	light up.	mūsculus,	little-mouse.
cum,	with (prep. with Abl.)	parāre,	prepare, prepare for.
exitium,	destruction.	recitāre,	read aloud, recite.
in,	prep., with Abl.	recūsāre,	refuse.
	in, on; with Acc. into,	servāre,	save, preserve.
	on.	thēsaurus,	treasure.

avoid,	vītāre.	invoke,	invocāre.
bark-at,	allatrāre (with Acc.).	put-to-flight,	fugāre.
care (subst.),	cūra.	pierce, stab,	perforāre.
change,	mūtāre.	surpass,	superāre.
entice,	allectāre.		

**Rule of Syntax:** Cause, Means, and Instrument are put in the Ablative.

*Rūsticus colubrum ligōne necat. The countryman kills the snake with the mattock.*

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

- 7 1. Mūsculus laqueīs liberat leōnem. 2. Cervī timidī cum leōnibus ambulābant. 3. Homō invidus nēminem laudābit. 4. Agricola thēsaurum in sōlitūdine cēlāvit. 5. Sturnus in sōlitūdinem āvolāvit. 6. Cōnsulis invitātiōnem recūsās. 7. Praedōnēs callidī pulchram asportābant imāginem. 8. Poēta malus longum carmen recitāverit. 9. Caupō parat exitium generō centuriōnis. 10. Longitūdine collī servāvī lupum. 11. Māgna fuit admīrātiō leōnum. 12. Sōl hominēs lūmine col-  
lustrat.

## II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. People praise the boy's poems. 2. We praise the picture of the peacock. 3. Read the list of names. 4. The Persians (*Persae*) invoke the sun. 5. The bat has changed [his] name. 6. Boys entice flies with honey.

B. 1. I stabbed the robber with a dagger. 2. No one will praise the speech. 3. The bravery of the slaves surpassed expectation. 4. The puppy barked-at the crowd. 5. Poets put-to-flight cares by songs. 6. Avoid the occasion of contest.

## XII. LIQUID STEMS (CONTINUED).

4. *Liquid stems in r.*43. 1. *Nominative without s ending.*

2. Words in -ter have no e between t and r except in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

## MASCULINES.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	labor,	<i>toil.</i>	labōr-ēs.	pater,	<i>father.</i>	patr-ēs.
G.	labōr-is,		labōr-um.	patr-is,		patr-um.
D.	labōr-I,		labōr-ibus.	patr-I,		patr-ibus.
Ac.	labōr-em,		labōr-ēs.	patr-em,		patr-ēs.
V.	labor,		labōr-ēs.	pater,		patr-ēs.
Abl.	labō-re,		labōr-ibus.	patr-e,		patr-ibus.

## NEUTERS.

N. A. V.	fulgur,	<i>lightning.</i>	fulgur-a.	rōbur,	<i>oak.</i>	rōbor-a.
G.	fulgur-is,		fulgur-um.	rōbor-is,		rōbor-um.
D.	fulgur-I,		fulgur-ibus.	rōbor-I,		rōbor-ibus.
Abl.	fulgur-e,		fulgur-ibus.	rōbor-e,		rōbor-ibus.

In like manner decline :

MASCULINE.				NEUTER.	
passer,	<i>sparrow.</i>	frāter,	<i>brother.</i>	cadāver,	<i>dead body.</i>
passer-is.		frātr-is.		cadāver-is.	
dolor,	<i>pain, anguish.</i>	ōrātor,	<i>speaker.</i>	femur,	<i>thigh.</i>
dolōr-is.		ōrātōr-is,	<i>orator.</i>	femor-is.	
fūr,	<i>thief.</i>	vultur,	<i>vulture.</i>	guttur,	<i>throat.</i>
fūr-is.		vultur-is.		guttur-is.	



Anna

Waldo S. Maternan

vultur. 4. Vulturī\* collum perforāvit vĕnātor sagittā. 5. Ursī nōn dēvorābunt cadāvera. 6. Puerī cāram mātrem vocābunt. 7. Hominēs bonōrum cōnsiliōrum auctōrēs laudābunt. 8. Fulgura cito purgant caelum. 9. Viātōrēs impigrī fugāverint fūrēs. 10. Ō bonī pāstōrēs, fugāte leōnem. 11. Dolor gutturis cruciābat lupum. 12. Pāstor mōnstrat lupum vĕnātōrī.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. The cunning thieves were carrying away the geese. 2. The herdsman was chastising the thief with blows. 3. Wicked men will invoke God with great anguish [but] in-vain. 4. [My] brother's son has surpassed the great orator. 5. Women like to dress up (= willingly [*libenter*] adorn) [their] daughters. 6. The good daughter will free [her] mother from great labor.

B. 1. The sparrows flew to the painter's picture. 2. The ancient painters used four colors. 3. The orator read-aloud to the boys a speech about the donkey's shadow. 4. The wife of the thief put the wolves to flight from [his] dead-body. 5. Avoid with care the hiding-place of thieves. 6. The hunter saved [his] wife's sister.

XIII. SECOND CONJUGATION.

45.

STEM FORMS.

<i>Present Indicative.</i>	<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
1. dēle-ō,	dēlē-re,	dēlē-vī,	dēlē-tum,	<i>blot out.</i>
2. mone-ō,	monē-re,	mon-uī,	moni-tum,	<i>remind.</i>

The complete paradigm of the Active Voice is given for convenience of reference. The beginner is expected to learn only the Infinitive; Indicative, Present and Imperfect; 2d Person Sing. and Pl. 1st Imperative.

\* The Dative is often to be translated by a possessive with the stress on the other case employed:

Asinō dorsum verberant, *They beat the donkey's BACK (for him).*  
 Asini dorsum verberant, *They beat the DONKEY'S back.*

## 46.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

	<i>Destroy (blot out).</i>		<i>Be destroying, may destroy.</i>
SING.—1.	dēle-ō,		dēle-a-m,
	2. dēlē-s,		dēle-ā-s,
	3. dēle-t,		dēle-a-t.
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-mus,		dēle-ā-mus,
	2. dēlē-tis,		dēle-ā-tis,
	3. dēle-nt,		dēle-a-nt.

## IMPERFECT.

	<i>Was destroying.</i>		<i>Was destroying, might destroy.</i>
SING.—1.	dēlē-ba-m,		dēlē-re-m,
	2. dēlē-bā-s,		dēlē-rē-s,
	3. dēlē-ba-t,		dēlē-re-t.
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-bā-mus,		dēlē-rē-mus,
	2. dēlē-bā-tis,		dēlē-rē-tis,
	3. dēlē-ba-nt,		dēlē-re-nt.

## FUTURE.

	<i>Shall destroy.</i>
SING.—1.	dēlē-b-ō,
	2. dēlē-bi-s,
	3. dēlē-bi-t.
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-bi-mus,
	2. dēlē-bi-tis,
	3. dēlē-bu-nt.

## IMPERATIVE.

	FIRST.		SECOND.
SING.—2.	dēlē,	<i>destroy thou,</i>	dēlē-tō, <i>thou shalt destroy.</i>
			dēlē-tō, <i>he shall destroy.</i>
PLUR.—2.	dēlē-te,	<i>destroy ye,</i>	dēlē-tōte, <i>ye shall destroy.</i>
			dēlo-ntō, <i>they shall destroy.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	N. dēlē-n-s; G. dēle-nt-is, <i>destroying.</i>
FUTURE.	dēlē-tūr-us, -a, -um, <i>about to destroy.</i>



47.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have destroyed, destroyed.**Have, may have, destroyed.*

SING.—1.	dēlē-vī,
	2. dēlē-vi-stī,
	3. dēlē-vi-t,
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-vi-mus,
	2. dēlē-vi-stis,
	3. dēlē-vē-runt,

dēlē-ve-ri-m,
dēlē-ve-rī-s,
dēlē-ve-ri-t.
dēlē-ve-rī-mus,
dēlē-ve-rī-tis,
dēlē-ve-ri-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had destroyed.**Had, might have, destroyed.*

SING.—1.	dēlē-ve-ra-m,
	2. dēlē-ve-rā-s,
	3. dēlē-ve-ra-t,
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-ve-rā-mus,
	2. dēlē-ve-rā-tis,
	3. dēlē-ve-ra-nt,

dēlē-vi-sse-m,
dēlē-vi-ssē-s,
dēlē-vi-sse-t.
dēlē-vi-ssē-mus,
dēlē-vi-ssē-tis,
dēlē-vi-sse-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have destroyed.*

SING.—1.	dēlē-ve-r-ō,
	2. dēlē-ve-rī-s,
	3. dēlē-ve-ri-t.
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-ve-rī-mus,
	2. dēlē-ve-rī-tis,
	3. dēlē-ve-ri-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. dēlē-re, *to destroy.*PERFECT. dēlē-vi-sse, *to have destroyed*FUTURE. dēlē-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to destroy.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [dēlē-re], *destroying, to destroy.*G. dēle-nd-i, *of destroying.*D. dēle-nd-ō, *to, for destroying.*Ac. [dēlē-re] (ad) dēle-nd-um, *destroying,*  
*to destroy.*Abl. dēle-nd-ō, *by destroying.*1. dēlē-tum, *to destroy.*2. dēlē-tū, *to destroy,*  
*in the destroying.*

48. SYNOPSIS OF *mone-ō*, *I remind*.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	<i>mone-ō</i> ,
IMPF.	<i>monē-ba-m</i> ,
FUT.	<i>monē-b-ō</i> .
PERF.	<i>mon-uī</i> ,
PLPF.	<i>mon-ue-ra-m</i> ,
F. PF.	<i>mon-ue-r-ō</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>mone-a-m</i> .
<i>monē-re-m</i> .
<i>mon-ue-ri-m</i> .
<i>mon-ui-sse-m</i> .

## IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.	<i>monē</i> ,
SECOND.	<i>monē-tō</i> .

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>monē-re</i> .
PERF.	<i>mon-ui-sse</i> .
FUT.	<i>moni-tūr-um</i> , -am, -um, esse.
FUT.	<i>moni-tūr-us</i> , a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.	PRES.	<i>monē-n-s</i> .
GERUND.		<i>mone-nd-ī</i> .
SUPINE.	1.	<i>moni-tum</i> .

2. *moni-tū*.

## 49.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>admovēre</i> ,	<i>move up</i> .	<i>pārēre</i> ,	<i>be obedient</i> (with Dat.).
<i>dēbēre</i> ,	<i>owe</i> .	<i>permulcēre</i> ,	<i>stroke, fondle, soothe</i> .
<i>flēre</i> ,	<i>weep</i> .	<i>præbēre</i> ,	<i>afford, furnish</i> .
<i>fulgērc</i> ,	<i>glitter</i> .	<i>prandēre</i> ,	<i>breakfast</i> .
<i>habēre</i> ,	<i>have, hold</i> .	<i>prohibēre</i> ,	<i>keep-away</i> .
<i>invidēre</i> ,	<i>feel envy towards</i> (Dat.).	<i>respondēre</i> ,	<i>make answer</i> .
<i>manēre</i> ,	<i>remain, stay</i> .	<i>sedēre</i> ,	<i>sit</i> .
<i>movēre</i> ,	<i>move</i> .	<i>solēre</i> ,	<i>be accustomed</i> .
<i>nocēre</i> ,	<i>be hurtful, do harm</i> (with Dat.).	<i>terrēre</i> ,	<i>frighten</i> .

<i>cēnāre</i> ,	<i>dine</i> .	<i>nāsus</i> ,	<i>nose</i> .
<i>commodum</i> ,	<i>advantage, comfort</i> .	<i>nīdus</i> ,	<i>nest</i> .
<i>corvus</i> ,	<i>raven</i> .	<i>oppidum</i> ,	<i>town</i> .
<i>dea</i> ,	<i>goddess</i> .	<i>optimus, a, um</i> ,	<i>best</i> .
<i>dictitāre</i> ,	<i>say-over-and-over</i> .	<i>permāgnus, a, um</i> ,	<i>very great</i> ,
<i>dorsum</i> ,	<i>back</i> .		<i>large</i> .
<i>exiguus, a, um</i> ,	<i>small, scant, paltry</i> .	<i>porta</i> ,	<i>gate</i> .
<i>māgnificus, a, um</i> ,	<i>magnificent</i> .	<i>querēla</i> ,	<i>complaint</i> .
<i>multum</i> ,	<i>much</i> .	<i>sed</i> (conj.),	<i>but</i> .

## POSSESSIVES.

meus, a, um, *my* (Voc. Masc. mī).  
 tuus, a, um, *thy, your* (ōf the 2d P. S.).  
 nōster, tra, trum, *our*.  
 vester, tra, trum, *your* (of the 2d P. Pl.).  
 suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their, own*.

ask,	rogāre.	tongue,	lingua.
bull,	taurus.	too-much,	nimius, a, um.
health,	valētūdō, inis, f.	try,	tentāre.
if,	sī.	weigh-down,	gravāre.
on, (prep.),	in (w. Abl.).	where,	ubī.
runaway,	fugitīvus, a, um.	worthy,	probus, a, um.

*Rule of Syntax:* Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding, take the Dative.\*

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Dominus asinī habet catulum. 2. Cūr permulcēs catulum ? dictitat asinus. 3. Ursus nāsū suū ad hominis nāsū admovēbat. 4. Leō terrēbat vēnātōrēs. 5. Ego prandēbam, tū cēnābās. 6. Oppidum exiguum permāgnās et māgnificās habēbat portās. 7. Manē, māter optima. 8. Asinī multa commōda dominīs praebebant. 9. Malus cibus nocet incautīs puerīs. 10. Rānae flēbant sed deum nōn movēbant querēlīs. 11. Discipulus bonus magistrī pāret cōsiliīs. 12. Ō agricolae, cūr dēlētis nidōs corvōrum ? ✕

\* The following old rule has been found serviceable :

A Dative put, remember, pray,  
 After Envy, Spare, Obey,  
 Persnade, Command, Believe ; to these  
 Add Pardon, Succor, and Displeas,  
 With **vacāre**, to have leisure,  
 And **placēre**, to give pleasure,  
 With **nūbere** (of the female said),  
 The English of it is to wed.  
**Servire** add, and add **studēre**,  
 Heal, Favor, Hurt, Resist, and **indulgēre**.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. A little fly was sitting on the back of a great bull. 2. If I am weighing-down the bull, I will fly-away, said the fly over and over. Where art thou? asked the bull. 3. The bad men kept the goddess away from the water. 4. The worthy man answers with great joy. It-is my son. 5. I am not accustomed to feel-envy-to [ward] wicked people.

B. 1. Peacocks glitter with (Abl.) beautiful colors. 2. Answer thy teacher immediately, my ( $\bar{o}$ ) boy. 3. The lion fondles the man with [his] tongue. 4. We are trying to move the thieves by [our] complaints. 5. A runaway ass was frightening men and beasts. 6. Too much labor is-hurtful to health. 7. You owe much to [your] father.

**50. Rules of Position:** Review, varying the order of words in the lessons according to these rules:

I. The adjective follows its substantive, and so do the equivalents of the adjective—genitive and the like.

II. The qualifiers of the verb precede the verb; for instance, adverbs and oblique cases with or without prepositions.

The adverb is put near the verb.

The indirect object generally precedes the direct object.

III. The reversal of the above rules produces *emphasis*. Hence, the emphatic place

For the *verb* is at the beginning;

For the *object*, at the end of a sentence;

For the *adjective*, before the substantive;

For the *adverb*, at a distance from the verb;

For the *indirect object*, after the direct object.

---

#### XIV. SIBILANT STEMS OF THIRD DECLENSION.

##### B.—SIBILANT STEMS.

**51. The Nominative has no additional s.**

In other cases the s of the stem is changed into r between two vowels.

## MASCULINES.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. cinis, <i>ashes.</i>	ciner-ēs.	mōs, <i>custom, manner.</i>	mōr-ēs.
G. ciner-is,	ciner-um.	mōr-is,	mōr-um.
D. ciner-I,	ciner-ibus.	mōr-I,	mōr-ibus.
Ac. ciner-em,	ciner-ēs.	mōr-em,	mōr-ēs.
V. cinis,	ciner-ēs.	mōs,	mōr-ēs.
Abl. ciner-e,	ciner-ibus.	mōr-e,	mōr-ibus.

## NEUTERS.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. A. V. genus, <i>kind, race.</i>	gener-a.	corpus, <i>body.</i>	corpor-a.
G. gener-is,	gener-um.	corpor-is,	corpor-um.
D. gener-I,	gener-ibus.	corpor-I,	corpor-ibus.
Abl. gener-e,	gener-ibus.	corpor-e.	corpor-ibus.

## 52.

## VOCABULARY.

*Sibilant Stems.*

For Rules of Gender, see p. 90.

## MASCULINE.

flos, oris, <i>flower.</i>	corpus, oris, <i>body.</i>
pulvis, eris, <i>dust.</i>	crūs, ūris, <i>leg.</i>
mūs, ūris, <i>mouse.</i>	facinus, oris, <i>deed, crime.</i>
G. pl. mūrīum.	foedus, eris, <i>treaty.</i>
	frīgus, oris, <i>cold.</i>
	lītus, oris, <i>shore.</i>

## NEUTER.

onus, eris, <i>load, burden.</i>
opus, eris, <i>work.</i>
pectus, oris, <i>breast.</i>
ōs, oris, <i>mouth, face.</i>
os, ossis, <i>bone.</i>
G. pl. ossium.

× captāre,	<i>snatch at.</i>	levāre,	<i>relieve (w. Abl.).</i>
cauda,	<i>tail.</i>	mortuus, I,	<i>dead-man.</i>
fluvius, I,	<i>river.</i>	paenitentia,	<i>repentance.</i>
frēnum,	<i>bit.</i>	parvulus, a, um,	<i>little (poor little).</i>
(haerēre,	<i>stick.</i>	saepe,	<i>often.</i>
× humāre,	<i>bury.</i>	sērus, a, um,	<i>late, too late.</i>
imperātor,	<i>general.</i>	spectāre,	<i>behold.</i>

burn,	cremāre.	grateful,	grātus, a, um.
cheese,	cāseus, I.	Greek,	Graecus, a, um.
crown,	corōnāre.	many,	multī, ae, a.
deceitful,	dolōsus, a, um.	Roman,	Rōmānus, a, um.
either-or,	aut-aut.	size,	māgnitūdō, inis (fem.).
famous,	clārus, a, um.	willingly,	libenter.



## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Vēnātor corpus ursī sagittā perforāvit. 2. Cervus imāginem suam in fluviō spectābat ; crūra vituperat, sed crūra saepe servāverant stolidum cervum. 3. Equus superbus frēnum molestum in ōre habet. 4. Ursus ōs suum ad hominis ōs admovet. 5. Os in gutture lupī haeret. 6. Levā parvulum puerum onere. 7. Paenitentia facinoris sēra esse solet. 8. Puerī in lītore ambulābant. 9. Catulus ōre os captābit. 10. Frīgus nocet hominum corporibus. 11. Pulvis viātōribus molestus est. 12. Imperātor foedera servābit. 13. Mōrēs Rōmānōrum sevērī fuerant.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. Ashes are deceitful. 2. Be-off [= walk] to the (*in w.* Acc.) fields to (*ad*) thy work. 3. Mice like-to [= willingly] devour cheese. 4. The Greeks and Romans either buried or burned the bodies of [their] dead. 5. The lion frightens the traveller by the size of [his] body. 6. The poet's song soothes the breast of the angry general. 7. Many are the kinds of beasts. 8. My (*ō*) girls, crown [your] mother with flowers. 9. The grateful girls will relieve [their] sick mother of many burdens. 10. Frogs have long legs. 11. The deeds of the Romans are famous. 12. Thou art injuring thy body by toil.

## XV. THIRD CONJUGATION. 7

## 53.

## STEM FORMS.

<i>Present Indicative.</i>	<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect Indicative.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
1. em-ō,	em-e-re,	ēm-i,	em-tum (emptum), buy.
2. capi-ō,	cap-e-re,	cēp-i,	cap-tum, take, catch.

In Verbs like **capio**, **i** belongs to the stem before **a, ē, o, u, et** and **ent**.

Learn Infinitive ; Indicative, Present and Imperfect ; 2d Person Singular and plur, 1st Imperative, Active, of **emō** and of **capiō**,

54.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE. ACTIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.  
PRESENT.

<i>I am buying.</i>	<i>I am taking.</i>	<i>I be buying.</i>	<i>I be taking.</i>
SING.—1. em-ō,	capi-ō,	em-a-m,	capi-a-m,
2. em-i-s,	cap-i-s,	em-ā-s,	capi-ā-s,
3. em-i-t.	cap-i-t.	em-a-t.	capi-a-t.
PLUR.—1. em-i-mus,	cap-i-mus,	em-ā-mus,	capi-ā-mus,
2. em-i-tis,	cap-i-tis,	em-ā-tis,	capi-ā-tis,
3. em-u-nt.	cap-i-u-nt.	em-a-nt.	capi-a-nt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>I was buying.</i>	<i>I was taking.</i>	<i>I were buying.</i>	<i>I were taking.</i>
SING.—1. em-ē-ba-m,	capi-ē-ba-m,	em-e-re-m,	cap-e-re-m,
2. em-ē-bā-s,	capi-ē-bā-s,	em-e-rē-s,	cap-e-rē-s,
3. em-ē-ba-t.	capi-ē-ba-t.	em-e-re-t.	cap-e-re-t.
PLUR.—1. em-ē-bā-mus,	capi-ē-bā-mus,	em-e-rē-mus,	cap-e-rēmus,
2. em-ē-bā-tis,	capi-ē-bā-tis,	em-e-rē-tis,	cap-e-rē-tis,
3. em-ē-ba-nt.	capi-ē-ba-nt.	em-e-re-nt.	cap-e-re-nt.

FUTURE.

*Shall be buying, shall buy. Shall take.*

SING.—1. em-a-m,	capi-a-m,
2. em-ē-s,	capi-ē-s,
3. em-e-t.	capi-e-t.
PLUR.—1. em-ē-mus,	capi-ē-mus,
2. em-ē-tis,	capi-ē-tis,
3. em-e-nt.	capi-e-nt.

IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.	SECOND.	FIRST.	SECOND.
SING.—2. em-e, buy.	2. em-i-tō,	cap-e, take.	cap-i-tō,
	3. em-i-tō.		cap-i-tō.
PLUR.—2. em-i-te.	2. em-i-tōte,	cap-i-te.	cap-i-tōte,
	3. em-u-ntō.		cap-i-u-ntō.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. N. em-ē-n-s ; G. em-e-nt-is.	N. capi-ē-n-s ; G. capi-e-nt-is.
FUT. em (p)-tūr-us, a, um.	cap-tūr-us, a, um.

## 55.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.		ACTIVE.	
		PERFECT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>I have bought, taken.</i>		<i>have, may have, bought, taken.</i>	
SING.—1.	ēm-i, cēp-ī, etc.	ēm-e-ri-m, -	cēp-e-ri-m, etc.
	2. ēm-i-stī,	ēm-e-rī-s,	
	3. ēm-i-t.	ēm-e-ri-t.	
PLUR.—1.	ēm-i-mus,	ēm-e-rī-mus,	
	2. ēm-i-stis,	ēm-e-rī-tis,	
	3. ēm-ē-ru-nt.	ēm-e-ri-nt.	
PLUPERFECT.			
<i>I had bought, taken.</i>		<i>had, might have, bought, taken.</i>	
SING.—1.	ēm-e-ra-m, cēp-e-ra-m, etc.	ēm-i-sse-m, cēp-i-sse-m, etc.	
	2. ēm-e-rā-s,	ēm-i-ssē-s,	
	3. ēm-e-ra-t.	ēm-i-sse-t.	
PLUR.—1.	ēm-e-rā-mus,	ēm-i-ssē-mus,	
	2. ēm-e-rā-tis,	ēm-i-ssē-tis,	
	3. ēm-e-ra-nt.	ēm-i-sse-nt.	
FUTURE PERFECT.			
<i>I shall have bought, taken.</i>			
SING.—1.	ēm-e-r-ō, cēp-e-r-ō, etc.		
	2. ēm-e-rī-s,		
	3. ēm-e-ri-t.		
PLUR.—1.	ēm-e-rī-mus,		
	2. ēm-e-rī-tis,		
	3. ēm-e-ri-nt.		
INFINITIVE.			
PRES.	em-e-re, <i>to buy.</i>	cap-e-re, <i>to take, taking, etc.</i>	
PERF.	ēm-i-sse, <i>to have bought.</i>	cēp-i-sse, <i>to have taken.</i>	
FUT.	em-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to be about to buy.</i>	cap-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to be about to take.</i>	
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
N.	[em-e-re],		
G.	em-e-nd-ī, capi-e-nd-ī, etc.		
D.	em-e-nd-ō,		
AC.	[em-e-re] (ad) em-e-nd-um,	1. em-tum,	cap-tum,
Abl.	em-e-nd-ō.	2. em-tū,	cap-tū.

56.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs of Third Conjugation.

accēdō, / approach.	alius, a, um,	another.
accurrō, run up.	amīcus, ī,	friend.
committō, join.	auxilium, ī,	aid.
dēscendō, come down.	clāmō, 1.	cry aloud.
fluō, flow.	dum,	while, so long as.
gerō, carry on.	duo,	two.
irrupō, break, burst, in among.	eques, itis,	horseman.
lūdō, play, make sport of.	gallīna,	hen.
petō, seek, pelt.	gallus, ī,	cock.
vēndō, sell.	inquit,	quoth he.
vincō, overcome.	inquiunt,	say they.
vīvō, live.	nūntius, ī,	news, tidings.
	pūgna,	fight, battle.
	pugnō, 1.	fight.
	sanguis, inis, m.	blood.
	silva,	wood, forest.
	solum, ī,	soil, ground.
	tandem,	at length.
	tertium,	third time.
	vulpēcula,	fox.

begin,	incipiō, 3.	log,	lignum, ī,
collect,	colligō, 3.	nothing,	nihil.
cut,	caedō, 3.	sec,	videō, 2.
draw out,	extrahō, 3.	please,	placeō, 2. (w. Dat.)
feather,	penna.	plunge,	dēmergō, 3.
hang,	suspendō, 3.	propose,	prōpōnō, 3.
jackdaw,	graculus, ī.	river,	fluvius, ī.
lead,	dūcō, 3.	tree,	arbor, ōris. f.
life,	vīta.		

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English :

1. Pater emit flōrēs. 2. Māter vēndēbat pāvōnem. 3. Mūrēs lūdēbant in silvā. 4. Duo catulī, Nerō et Phylax, cōnspiciunt os. Amīcī pūgnam committunt. Fluēbat solum sanguine. Tandem Phylax Nerōnem fugat. Sed dum pūgnant, alius catulus os surripit. 5. Vulpēcula callida tentābat

gallum dēcipere. Laetum, inquit, accipite nūntium, ō galli et gallīnae. Dēscendite. Libenter nūntium accipiō, respondet gallus. Dum dēscendunt, catulus accurrit. Cito aufugit vulpēcula. 6. Puer improbus dēcipiēbat pāstōrēs. Tandem lupus irrumpit. Lupus accēdit, clāmat puer. Sed nēmō accurrit. Tertium nōs dēcipit, inquiunt pāstōrēs. 7. Equus gerēbat bellum cum cervō. Auxilium petit ab homine. Hominis auxiliō equus cervum vincit. Sed equitis servus miseram vītam vīvit.

II. Translate into Latin :

1. The son likes-to-receive [receives willingly] books from (ā) the father.
2. The mice proposed many-things (*multa*), but nothing pleased.
3. Lead (Pl.) the horse to water.
4. (The shepherd was hanging the wolf from (*dē* w. Abl.) a tree.)
5. Draw the arrow out (*ē*) of the frog's leg.
6. I was cutting wood (logs) in a forest. Why are you cutting wood? asked the farmer. The wood is mine.
7. The bat perceived the danger.
8. The carpenter was-plunging himself (*sē*) into the river.
9. The jackdaw collects feathers.

57.

**Amicus certus in rē incertā cernitur.**

A ticklish test to try a trusty friend.

Duo amīcī ūnā faciunt iter. Occurrit in itinere ursus. Alter arborem cōnscondit et perīculum ēvītat : alter, cum meminisset illam bestiam cadāvera nōn attingere, humī sēsē prōsternit animamque continet sē mortuum esse simulāns. Accēdit ursus, contrectat jacentem, ōs suum ad hominis ōs aurēsque admovet ; cadāver esse ratus, discēdit. Postēā cum socius quaereret quidnam eī ursus dixisset in aurem, respondit : Monuit nē cōnfīderem amīcō eūjus fidem adversō tempore nōn essem expertus.

as he-remembered  
that See § 155.1 on-the-ground  
himself  
him-lying ears-too  
reckoning as  
asked what to-him had-said ear answered  
warned that-not I-should-put-full-faith-in whose faithfulness in-adverse  
time (adversity) I had tried.



XVI. MUTE STEMS OF THIRD DECLENSION.

58.

C.—MUTE STEMS.

1. *All masculines and feminines* of mute stems have **s** in the Nominative.

2. Most mute stems of more than two syllables change their final vowel **i** into **e** in the Nominative.

3. A **K**-mute combining with **s** becomes **x**, as :

pāc-s = pāx, *peace*; rēg-s = rēx, *king*.

A **T**-mute before **s** is dropped, as :

aetāt-s = aetās, *age*; ped-s = pēs, *foot*.

4. Mute stems of one syllable that have a consonant before the mute, form the Gen. Plur. in **-ium**. So do others occasionally.

P-mute.

K-mute.

T-mute.

SING.—N.	princep-s, <i>prince, chief, m.</i>	rēx, <i>king.</i>	aetās, <i>age, f.</i>
G.	princip-is,	rēg-is,	aetāt-is,
D.	princip-i,	rēg-i,	aetāt-i,
Acc.	princip-em,	rēg-em,	aetāt-em,
Voc.	princep-s,	rēx,	aetās,
Abl.	princip-e.	rēg-e.	aetāt-e.

PLUR.—N.	princip-ēs,	rēg-ēs,	aetāt-ēs,
G.	princip-um,	rēg-um,	aetāt-um,
Dat.	princip-ibus,	rēg-ibus,	aetāt-ibus,
Acc.	princip-ēs,	rēg-ēs,	aetāt-ēs,
Voc.	princip-ēs,	rēg-ēs,	aetāt-ēs,
Abl.	princip-ibus.	rēg-ibus.	aetāt-ibus.

SING.—N.	urb-s, <i>city, f.</i>	arx, <i>citadel, f.</i>	pars, <i>share,</i>
G.	urb-is,	arc-is,	part-is, [ <i>part. f.</i>
D.	urb-i,	arc-i,	part-i,
Acc.	urb-em,	arc-em,	part-em,
Voc.	urb-s,	arx,	pars,
Abl.	urb-e.	arce.	part-e.

PLUR.—N.	urb-ēs,	arc-ēs,	part-ēs,
G.	urb-ium,	arc-ium,	part-ium,
D.	urb-ibus,	arc-ibus,	part-ibus,
Acc.	urb-ēs,	arc-ēs,	part-ēs,
Voc.	urb-ēs,	arc-ēs,	part-ēs,
Abl.	urb-ibus.	arc-ibus.	part-ibus.

*Rule of Gender.*—Mute-stems are largely feminine, unless males are meant.

## 59.

## VOCABULARY.

P-mute.		T-mute.	
stirps, f.	<i>stock, splinter.</i>	custōs, ōdis, m.	<i>keeper.</i>
	K-mute.	dēns, dentis, m.	<i>tooth.</i>
culex, icis, m.	<i>gnat.</i>	juventūs, ūtis, f.	<i>youth, (time of life).</i>
grex, gregis, m.	<i>flock.</i>	mīles, itis, m.	<i>soldier.</i>
pāx, pācis, f.	<i>peace.</i>	mors, mortis, f.	<i>death.</i>
vōx, vōcis, f.	<i>voice.</i>	pēs, pedis, m.	<i>foot.</i>
		senectūs, ūtis, f.	<i>old age.</i>
		voluptās, ātis, f.	<i>pleasure.</i>
—			
acūtus, a, um,	<i>sharp.</i>	fatigātus, a, um,	<i>fatigued.</i>
clārus, a, um,	<i>loud.</i>	iter, itineris, n.	<i>journey, way.</i>
condō, 3.	<i>build, found.</i>	miseria,	<i>wretchedness, misery.</i>
corripīō, 3.	<i>seize.</i>	pascō, 3.	<i>feed.</i>
creō, 1.	<i>create, make.</i>	reputō, 1.	<i>consider.</i>
dē (prep. w. Abl.),	<i>down from.</i>	Rōma,	<i>Rome.</i>
dēpōnō, 3.	<i>lay down.</i>	sīmius, ī.	<i>ape, monkey.</i>
award,	tribuō, 3.	law,	lēx, lēgis, f.
booty,	praeda.	liberty,	libertās, ātis, f.
companion,	comes, itis, m. & f.	marsh,	palūs, ūdis, f.
country,	patria.	praise,	laus, laudis, f.
crop,	seges, etis, f.	stone,	lapis, idis, m.
defend,	dēfendō, 3.	storm,	tempestās, ātis, f.
foot-soldier,	pedes, itis, m.	surround,	cingō, 3.
give-way,	cēdō, 3. (with Dat.).	take,	sūmō, 3.
greatest,	maximus, a, um.	wish,	voluntās, ātis, f.
judge,	jūdex, icis, m.	wound,	vulnus, eris, n.
just,	jūstus, a, um.		

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English:

1. Rōmulus urbem Rōmam condit. 2. Bestiae sīmium regem creāvērunt. 3. In pāce parā bellum. 4. Vitāte dolōsās voluptātēs. 5. Mūs habēbat acūtōs dentēs. 6. Puer improbus patris gregem pascēbat. 7. Vēnātor stirpem ex pede suō extrahit. 8. Custōdēs colubrum corripunt. 9. Passer callidus capit culicem; culex clamāvit: Reputā juventūtem meam. 10. Avus meus fatīgātus onere et itinere dēpōnit ligna, senectūtis miserīās reputat, clārā vōce mortem invocat.

## II. Translate into Latin:

1. The city had very-large and magnificent gates. 2. Great marshes surround the city. 3. Men award praise to a just judge. 4. Soldiers! defend country and liberty. 5. We give way to thy wish. 6. The boys pelt the frogs with stones. 7. The storm was-doing-damage (*noceō*) to the crop. 8. The lion takes the greatest part of the booty. 9. The foot-soldiers received many wounds from (*ab*) the horsemen. 10. Obey the law, my (*ō*) companions.

## 60.

## Climax.

Passer callidus cēperat culicem. Culex clamābat: concēde  
had caught  
 mihi vītam, orō te. Reputā juventūtem meam. Nōn ita,  
to-me thee so  
 respondet ille, dēvorābō tē; nam ego sum māgnus, tū es par-  
that-one  
 vus. Passerem edentem cōspicit accipiter et cito unguibus  
eating talons  
 corripit. Tum passer clamāvit. Cūr mē necās? Nihil pec-  
Then Why me  
 cāvī. Parce. Nōn ita, respondet accipiter, dēvorābō tē: nam  
 ego sum magnus, tū es parvus. Dum accipiter passerem  
 dilacerat, subitō ex āere dēvolat vultur et corripit accipitrem.  
mangles suddenly

Māgne rēx, clāmat accipiter, mitte īram tuam et redde mihī<sup>Ń</sup>  
forego  
 libertātem. Nōn ita, respondet ille, dēvorābō tē : nam ego  
 sum magnus, tū es parvus. Ita loquēns praedam dīlaniat.  
speaking  
 Repente superbō collum perforat sagitta, quam vēnātor ē pro-  
which hard  
 pinquō ēmīserat. Cūr mē interficis ? clāmat vultur moribun-  
 dus. Nunquam tibi<sup>Ń</sup> nocuī. Jūre tē interficiō, respondet  
by had-shot. never to-thee With-right  
 vēnātor ; nam ego sum māgnus, tū es parvus.



## XVII. VOWEL STEMS OF THIRD DECLENSION.

### 1. VOWEL STEMS IN I.

(PARISYLLABIC VOWEL STEMS.)

**61. Masculines and feminines** form their Nominative in *s*.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem vowel into *e*.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem vowel *i* into *e*. This *e* is generally dropped after *l* and *r* in neuters of more than two syllables.

All stems in *i* have Genitive Plural in *-ium*.

All neuter stems in *i* have the Ablative Singular in *i*, and Nominative Plural in *-ia*.

REMARK.—Nominatives in *-is* and *-es* come either from *-i* stems or from consonant-stems.

Consonant-stems with Nom. in *-is* and *-es* have one syllable more in the Genitive and are said to *increase in the Genitive*.

Vowel-stems in *-i* do NOT increase in the Genitive.

Consonant : *lapis*, stone ; Genitive, *lapid-is*. *mīles*, soldier ; Genitive, *mīlit-is*.  
 - Vowel : *civis*, citizen. *civis*. *nūbēs*, cloud. *nūbis*.

## 62.

	M.	F.	F.
SING.—N.	colli-s, <i>hill.</i>	turri-s, <i>tower.</i>	vulpēs, <i>fox.</i>
G.	collis,	turris,	vulpis,
D.	colli,	turri,	vulpī,
Ac.	collem,	turrem (turri-m),	vulpem,
V.	colli-s,	turri-s,	vulpēs,
Abl.	colle.	turre (turri).	vulpe.
PLUR.—N.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,
G.	colli-um,	turri-um,	vulpi-um,
D.	colli-bus,	turri-bus,	vulpi-bus,
Ac.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,
V.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,
Abl.	colli-bus.	turri-bus.	vulpi-bus.
			[ <i>being.</i>
SING.—N. A. V.	mare, <i>sea.</i>	animal, <i>animal, living</i>	
G.	maris,	animālis,	
D. and Abl.	marī.	animālī.	
PLUR.—N. A. V.	mari-a,	animālī-a,	
G.	mari-um,	animālī-um,	
D. and Abl.	mari-bus.	animālī-bus.	

## 2. VOWEL STEMS IN U.

63. *Of stems in u*, only those of one syllable belong to the Third Declension.

grūs, *crane (fem.).*

SING.—N.		PLUR.—
N.	grūs,	gru-ēs,
G.	gru-is,	gru-um,
D.	gru-i,	gru-ibus,
Ac.	gru-em,	gru-ēs,
V.	grūs,	gru-ēs,
Abl.	gru-e.	gru-ibus.

*Rule of Gender.*—Stems in -i are for the most part feminine, with numerous exceptions when the Nominative ends in -is.

☞ See p. 94 for exceptions.

*Rule of Syntax:* Time When is put in the Ablative.

Hieme, *in winter time.*

Tertiō mēnse, *in the third month.*



## 64.

## VOCABULARY.

	<i>I-stems.</i>		
avis, f.	<i>bird.</i>	clāmor, ōris, m.	<i>cry.</i>
canis, c.	<i>dog.</i>	cūr ?	<i>why ?</i>
fascis, m.	<i>fagot.</i>	dolus, ī,	<i>trick.</i>
fēlēs, f.	<i>cat.</i>	dominus, ī,	<i>master.</i>
hostis, c.	<i>enemy.</i>	inter (prep. w. Acc.),	<i>among.</i>
ovis, f.	<i>sheep.</i>	mox,	<i>presently.</i>
pellis, f.	<i>skin, fleece.</i>	nūntiō, 1.	<i>announce.</i>
		praedicō, 1.	<i>proclaim,</i> <i>boast.</i>
		prō!	<i>O!</i>
		prōmittō, 3.	<i>promise.</i>
adsum (ad + sum),	<i>be present, here,</i>	proximus, a, um,	<i>next.</i>
	<i>present oneself.</i>	repetō, 3.	<i>repeat.</i>
		suāviter,	<i>sweetly.</i>
		tegō, 3.	<i>cover.</i>
		tollō, 3.	<i>raise, lift.</i>
		umerus, ī,	<i>shoulder.</i>
condgel,	fustis, is, m.	one,	ūnus, a, um.
drive-away,	abigō, 3.	region,	regiō, ōnis, f.
fear,	timeō, 2.	serpent,	serpēns, ntis, m. and f.
fire,	īgnis, is, m.	stall,	bovile, is, n.
lay-waste,	vastō, 1.		
lofty,	altus, a, um.		

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English:

1. Dum canēs pūgnant, fēlēs surripit os. 2. Avēs suāviter cantant. 3. Fugitīvus asinus videt in silvā pellem leōnis. Corpus pelle tegit. 4. Laetum accipite nūntium, inquit vulpēs. Est pāx inter animālia. Ambulant cum leōnibus cervī, cum lupīs ovēs, cum fēlibus mūrēs. Dum laetum praedicat nūntium, canis accurrit. Alius nūntiābit canī, inquit vulpēs. 5. Puer improbus clāmōrem tollit: Lupus adest. Accurrunt rūsticī. Proximō mēse dolum repetit.

Tandem lupus in gregem ovium irrumpit et multās ovēs dilaniat. 6. Lupus grūī praeium prōmittit. 7. Vēnātor fascem in umerōs tollit. Fatīgātus Mortem invocat. Mox Mors adest. Cūr mē invocās? Prō! līgnōrum fascem in umerōs meōs tolle. 8. Fēlēs hostis est avium. 9. Dominus avem ā fēle liberāvit.

## II. Translate into Latin:

1. A serpent was laying-waste the beautiful country [region]. Hercules overcomes the serpent with fire. 2. The servants cleanse the stalls with water. 3. One wolf does not fear many sheep. 4. The dog is the enemy of the race of cats. 5. The good shepherd preserved [his] sheep from (ā) the dogs. 6. The animals make the monkey [their] king. 7. The bad king surrounds the city with lofty towers. 8. The shepherds drive-away the wolf with cudgels. 9. The enemy (Pl.) throw (*dējiciō*) the citizens from the tower into the sea.

### 65.

#### Rūsticus et canis fidelis.

Rūsticus in agrōs exiit ad opus suum. Filiolum, quī in  
went-forth Little-son who  
 cūnīs jacēbat, reliquit canī fidēlī atque validō custōdiendum.  
he-left faithful and to-be-guarded.  
 Arrepsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum exstinctūrus erat.  
crept-up monstrous about-to-kill  
 Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus acūtīs et dum eum  
him  
 necāre studet, cūnās simul ēvertit super exstinctum anguem.  
is-trying killed  
 Paulō post ex arvō rediit agricola: eum cūnās ēversās cruen-  
returned as upset  
 tumque rictum vidēret, irā accenditur. Temerē igitur custō-  
and jaws he saw he-is-fired  
 dem filioli interficit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubī  
which in (his) hands when  
 cūnās restituit, super anguem occīsum repperit puerum vīvum  
he righted slain he-found  
 et incolumem. Paenitentia sēra fuit.  
unhurt.

## XVIII. ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

66. *The declension of Adjectives of the Third Declension* follows the rules given for the substantives.

## I.—VOWEL STEMS.

67. *Several stems in -i* drop the -i and insert *ë* before r in the Nominative Masculine. Stem *ācri*, *ācr-*, Nom. Masc. *ācer*.

	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.	MASC.	FEM. NEUTER.
SING.—N.	facili-s, <i>easy, good.</i>	facile,	ācer, <i>sharp,</i>	ācri-s, <i>ācre,</i>
G.	facilis, [ <i>natured.</i> ]		ācris, [ <i>keen.</i> ]	
D.	facilī,		ācrī,	
Ac.	facilem,	facile,	ācrem,	ācre,
V.	facili-s,	facile,	ācer,	ācri-s, <i>ācre,</i>
Abl.	facilī.		ācrī.	
PLUR.—N.	facilēs,	facili-a,	ācrēs,	ācri-a,
G.	facili-um,		ācri-um,	
D.	facili-bus,		ācri-bus,	
Ac.	facilēs,	facili-a,	ācrēs,	ācri-a,
V.	facilēs,	facili-a,	ācrēs,	ācri-a,
Abl.	facili-bus.		ācri-bus.	

## II.—CONSONANT STEMS.

68. *The consonant stems* have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
SING.—N.	fēlix, <i>lucky,</i>	fēlix,	prūdēns, <i>wise,</i>	prūdēns,	vetus, <i>old,</i>	vetus,
G.	fēlic-is,		prūdēt-is,		veter-is,	
D.	fēlic-i,		prūdēt-i,		veter-i,	
Ac.	fēlic-em,	fēlix,	prūdēt-em,	prūdēns,	veter-em,	vetus,
V.	fēlix,		prūdēns,		vetus,	
Abl.	fēlic-i (and -e).		prūdēt-i (and e).		veter-e (or i).	

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
PLUR.—N.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdent-ēs,	prūdentia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
G.	fēlic-ium,		prūdent-ium,		veter-um,	
D.	fēlic-ibus,		prūdent-ibus,		veter-ibus,	
Ac.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdent-ēs,	prūdentia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
V.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdent-ēs,	prūdentia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
Abl.	fēlic-ibus.		prūdent-ibus.		veter-ibus.	

1. In the Ablative Singular the consonant stems have *i* and *e*—when used as adjectives commonly *i*; when used as substantives commonly *e*.

The participles, as such, have *e*; but used as nouns or adjectives either *e* or *i*, with tendency to *i*.

2. In the Genitive Plural the consonant stems have : **-ium**, when the stem-consonant is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; **-um**, when the stem-consonant is preceded by a short vowel.

## 69.

## VOCABULARY.

### *Adjectives of Third Declension.*

crūdēlis, e,	<i>cruel.</i>	mendāx, ācis,	<i>lying.</i>
dēbilis, e,	<i>weak, disabled.</i>	omnis, e,	<i>all.</i>
dīves, itis,	<i>rich.</i>	pauper, eris,	<i>poor.</i>
fidēlis, e,	<i>faithful.</i>	perūtilis, e,	<i>very useful.</i>
gravis, e,	<i>heavy, severe.</i>	petulāns, ntis,	<i>saucy.</i>
immemor, is,	<i>unmindful.</i>	sapiēns, ntis,	<i>wise.</i>
ingēns, ntis,	<i>huge, great.</i>	turpis, e,	<i>foul, disgraceful.</i>
innocēns, ntis,	<i>harmless, innocent.</i>		

bibō, 3.	<i>drink.</i>	officium, i,	<i>duty, service.</i>
colō, 3.	<i>honor, worship.</i>	poena,	<i>punishment.</i>
cōstantia,	<i>firmness.</i>	praestō, 1.	<i>perform.</i>
foedō, 1.	<i>pollute.</i>	summus, a, um,	<i>highest, greatest.</i>
oculus, i,	<i>eye.</i>	tolerō, 1.	<i>endure.</i>

brave,	fortis, e.	pluck-fro <sup>7</sup> x,	ēripiō, 3 (w. Dat.).
equal,	pār, paris.	poison,	venēnum, i.
fat,	pinguis, e.	precept,	praeceptum, i.
fortune,	fortūna.	ring-through,	personō, 1.
green,	viridis, e.	sad,	tristis, e.
grove,	nemus, oris, n.	slender,	gracilis, e.
help,	adjuvō, 1 (w. Acc.).	spare,	parcō, 3 (w. Dat.).
mindful,	memor, is.	sweet,	suāvis, e.
mortal,	capitālis, e.	unhappy,	infēlix, icis

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Puerī petulantēs veterem ōrātōrem lūdunt. 2. Māter ācrem dolōrem summā cōstantiā tolerābat. 3. Leō dēbilem pedem tollit. 4. Mendācium hominum cōsilia sunt fallācia. 5. Vēnātor innocentī canī parcit. 6. Virōs sapientēs dēbēmus colere. (7. Rēx custōdī fidēlī summam tribuit laudem.) 8. Cīvēs infēlicēs crūdēlī rēgī pārent. 9. Oculī fidēlēs hominibus perūtīle officium praestant. 10. Dominus benevolus infēlicem servum gravī pōenā liberat. 11. Servī officīi immemorēs vīnum vetus bibunt. 12. Deus omnia commoda hominibus tribuit. 13. Dīvitibus molestae sunt pauperum querēlae. 14. Saepe summī imperātōrēs ingentem glōriam turpī crūdēlītāte foedāvērunt.

## II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The birds pluck the feathers from (Dat.) the impudent jackdaw. 2. Cats are mortal enemies of all birds. 3. The crūel wolf will deprive the good-natured crane of the reward. 4. The cat spares the lying bat. 5. My (*ō*) father, you are receiving sad news. 6. The stag was blaming [his] slender legs.

B. 1. The wolves will devour the fat sheep. 2. The active [sharp] poison is torturing the unhappy man. 3. The sweet voices of birds ring-through the green grove. 4. Fortune helps the brave. 5. Be ye mindful of my precepts. 6. The labors are equal, the rewards are not equal.

## XIX. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

70. *The degrees of comparison* are : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant



stems the endings **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Vowel-stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their stem-vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
	M. and F.	N.	
altus, -a, -um, <i>high</i> ,	alt-ior, <i>higher</i> ,	alt-ius,	alt-issimus, -a, -um, <i>highest</i> .
fortis, -e, <i>brave</i> ,	fort-ior,	fort-ius,	fort-issimus.
ūtilis, -e, <i>useful</i> ,	ūtil-ior,	ūtil-ius,	ūtil-issimus.
audāx, <i>bold</i> ,	audāc-ior,	audāc-ius,	audāc-issimus.
prūdēns, <i>wise</i> ,	prūdēt-ior,	prūdēt-ius,	prūdēt-issimus.

		M. and F.	N.
<b>71.</b>	SING.—N.	altior,	altius,
	G.	altiōr-is,	altiōr-is,
	D.	altiōr-ī,	altiōr-ī,
	Ac.	altiōr-em,	altius,
	V.	altior,	altius,
	Abl.	altiōr-e and -ī.	altiōr-e, and -ī.
PLUR.—N.	G.	altiōr-ēs,	altiōr-a,
	G.	altiōr-um,	altiōr-um,
	D.	altiōr-ibus,	altiōr-ibus,
	Ac.	altiōr-ēs,	altiōr-a,
	V.	altiōr-ēs,	altiōr-a,
	Abl.	altiōr-ibus.	altiōr-ibus.

PECULIARITIES.

**72.** 1. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** directly to the Nominative Masculine.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
miser, -a, -um, <i>wretched</i> .	miser-ior,	miser-ius,	miser-rimus.
celer, -is, -e, <i>swift</i> .	celer-ior,	celer-ius,	celer-rimus.
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>sharp</i> .	ācr-ior,	ācr-ius,	ācer-rimus.
vetus,	{	veter-ior,	veter-ius,
		vetust-ior,	vetust-ius,
			ve er-rimus.

mātūrus, *ripe*, sometimes mātur-rimus.

2. Six adjectives in *-ilis* form the Superlative by dropping the stem-vowel and adding *-limus*.

*facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *hard*; *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*; *gracilis*, *slender*; and *humilis*, *low*.

*facilis*,                      Comp. *facilior*,                      Sup. *facilimus*.

3. The adjectives in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-volus*, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from forms in *-dicēns*, *-ficēns*, and *volēns*.

*benevolus*, *benevolent*.      Comp. *benevolentior*,      Sup. *benevolentissimus*.  
*maledicus*, *scurrilous*.      *maledicentior*,      *maledicentissimus*.

In like manner :

*egēnus*, *needy*.                      *egentior*,                      *egentissimus*.  
*prōvidus*, *far-sighted*.      *prōvidentior*,      *prōvidentissimus*.

4. Adjectives in *-us*, preceded by a vowel, form the Comparative and Superlative by means of *magis* and *maximē*, *more* and *most* :

*idōneus*, *fit*.                      Comp. *magis idōneus*,                      Sup. *maximē idōneus*.

REMARK.—Adjectives in *-quus* are not included under this last rule.

*antīquus*, *old*.                      Comp. *antīquior*,                      Sup. *antīquissimus*.

### 73.

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>bonus</i> , <i>malus</i> , <i>māgnus</i> , <i>parvus</i> , <i>multus</i> ,	<i>good</i> . <i>bad</i> . <i>great</i> . <i>small</i> . <i>much</i> .	<i>melior</i> , <i>pējor</i> , <i>mājor</i> , <i>minor</i> , S. ——— Pl. <i>plūrēs</i> , <i>complūrēs</i> ,	<i>melius</i> , <i>pējus</i> , <i>mājus</i> , <i>minus</i> , <i>plūs</i> (no Dat. nor Abl.), <i>plūra</i> , G. Pl. <i>plūrium</i> . <i>complūra</i> and <i>-ia</i> .	<i>optimus</i> . <i>pessimus</i> . <i>maximus</i> . <i>minus</i> . <i>plūrimus</i> .
---	--	--	--	--

74. *Rules of Syntax*: 1. The Comparative degree takes *quam*, *than*, or the Ablative without *quam*.

*Nihil melius est bonitāte or quam bonitās*, *nothing is better than kindness*.

2. The Comparative and Superlative degrees take the Genitive of the Whole.

*Melior mulierum*, *the better of the (two) women*; *optima mulierum*, *the best of the women*.

REMARK.—The Superlative without a Genitive is often translated by *very* and Positive, sometimes by Positive alone, especially with persons.

3. Adjectives of Likeness take the Dative. *Similis* and *dissimilis* have also the Genitive, especially of Persons.

## 75.

## VOCABULARY.

acanthis, idis, f.	goldfinch.	nātū,	by birth.
agō, 3.	lead.	minimus nātū,	youngest.
annectō, 3.	attach.	maximus nātū,	eldest.
auris, is, f.	ear.	nullus, a, um,	none, no.
bēlua,	beast.	patrō, 1.	perform, perpetrate.
delphīnus, ī,	dolphin.	pigritia,	laziness.
elephantus, ī,	elephant.	quaestiō, ōnis, f.	question.
formīca,	ant.	rīdeō, 2.	laugh-at.
longē,	by far.	tintinnābulum, ī.	bell.
—			
annoyance,	molestia.	maid,	ancilla.
community,	civitas, ātis, f.	memory,	memoria.
friendship,	amicitia.	savage,	atrōx, ōcis.
kingdom,	rēgnum, ī.	tenacious,	tenax, ācis.
lose,	amittō, 3.	thank,	grātiās agō, 3.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Nulla bēlua prūdentior est quam elephantus. 2. Aquila superbissima est avium. 3. Acanthis habet pulcherrimās pennās. 4. Asinus est similis equō sed aurēs habet longiōrēs. 5. Filius patris simillimus est. 6. Improbī hominēs miserriam agunt vitam. 7. Mūrēs praedicābant prūdentissimum auctōrem cōsiliī. At maximus nātū mūrium : Tū, inquit, annecte tintinnābulum. 8. Pāstor lupum ab humillimā arbore suspendit. 9. Caupō pessimum facinus patrāvit. 10. Magister difficillimam quaestiōnem prōpōnit discipulō. 11. Plūrēs sunt ōrātōrēs quam poētae. 12. Omnēs carmen maledicentissimī poētae rīdebant. 13. Nihil pējus est quam pigritia. 14. Omnium imperātōrum longē prōvidentissimus fuit Fabius Maximus. 15. Formīca minor est muscā. 16. Filiārum meārum minor nātū pulchrior est sorōre.

## II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The impudent (Superl.) fellow (*homō*) was knocking-at the door. Depart (*discēde*), said the saucy (Superl.) maid. 2. Charles (*Carōlus*) is the best of all the scholars. 3. Thy teacher is kinder than mine was. 4. The savage (Superl.) lion spares the slave. 5. Caesar cries : Lead ye (*dūcō*) Canius to execution (*mors*). I thank [thee], quoth Canius, excellent [= best] prince. 6. It is very-easy to give-orders (*imperāre*). 7. Seneca had a very tenacious memory. 8. The legs of stags are very-slender.

B. 1. The wretched (Superl.) carpenter loses [his] axe (*secūris*, Acc. *im*). 2. Achilles was the most valiant [= brave] of the Greeks. 3. Nothing is sweeter than friendship. 4. You are very-like your brother. 5. The scurrilous (Superl.) servant abuses [his] kind (Superl.) master. 6. You have relieved [= freed] the community of a great (Superl.) annoyance. 7. No animal is swifter than the dolphin. 8. No one is more fit for (*ad* with Acc.) the throne [= kingdom] than the eldest son of the king.

## 7

## 76.

## Luscinia et acanthis.

Luscinia et acanthis ante fenestram in caveis <sup>shut up</sup> inclūsae pen-  
dēbant. Luscinia cantum <sup>song</sup> jūcundissimum incipit. Pater  
filium interrogat <sup>which</sup> utra avis tam suāviter canat, et ostendit eī <sup>is singing</sup> <sup>to-him</sup>  
utramque. Filius statim : Sine dubiō, inquit, acanthis <sup>that</sup> ista  
<sup>both</sup> est, quae <sup>which</sup> sonōs suāvissimōs ēdit ; pennās enim <sup>for</sup> habet pul-  
cherrimās. Haec <sup>this</sup> fābula <sup>those</sup> eōs reprehendit, <sup>who</sup> quī <sup>by</sup> hominēs ex  
vestibus et formā aestimant.



## XX. FOURTH DECLENSION.

**77. The Fourth Declension embraces** only stems of two or more syllables in -u. The endings are those of the Third Declension: only in some cases the vowel of the stem and the vowel of the ending blend, sometimes one or the other is dropped.\*

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
SING.—N. fructu-s, <i>fruit.</i>	PL. fructūs,	S. cornū, <i>horn.</i>	PL. cornu-a,
G. fructūs,	fructu-um,	cornūs,	cornu-um,
D. fructu-I (fructū),	fructibus,	cornū,	cornibus,
Ac. fructu-m,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornu-a,
V. fructu-s,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornu-a,
Abl. fructū.	fructibus.	cornū.	cornibus.

REMARKS.—1. Datives and Ablatives Plural in -ubus occur in nouns in -cus (except porticus), and in tribus, *tribe*; artus, *joint*; partus, *child-birth*; portus, *harbor*; sinus, *fold*.

2. Domus, *house*, Ablative Singular, domō; Genitive Plural, domuum and domōrum; Acc. Plur., domūs and domōs. Domī means, *at home*.

*Rule of Gender.*—Nouns in -us are masculine; those in -ū are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminines are idūs, pl. *the 15th day of the month*; tribus, *tribe*; porticus, *piazza*; acus, *needle*; manus, *hand*; domus, *house*.

## 78.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>Fourth Declension.</i>			
cantus,	<i>song (singing).</i>	faciō, 3.	<i>make, do.</i>
conventus,	<i>meeting.</i>	infāns, ntis,	<i>infant, baby.</i>
exercitus,	<i>army.</i>	iter longum,	<i>forced march.</i>
impetus,	<i>attack.</i>	juvenis, is,	<i>youth, young man.</i>
pressus,	<i>pressure.</i>	lacertī, ōrum,	<i>arms.</i>
versus,	<i>verse.</i>	magnopere,	<i>greatly.</i>
		omissus, a, um,	<i>omitted.</i>
		philosophus, ī,	<i>philosopher.</i>
bellē,	<i>finely.</i>	pungō, 3.	<i>prick.</i>
delectō, 1.	<i>delight.</i>	saltō, 1.	<i>dance, leap.</i>
dracō, ōnis,	<i>dragon.</i>	teneō, 2.	<i>hold, remember.</i>
exanimō, 1.	<i>kill.</i>		

\* The Genitive Singular of the Fourth Declension ends in -ūs. (See p. 15.)



about,	dē (with Abl.).	Rhodian,	Rhodium, a, um.
carry,	ferō, 3.	sense,	sēnsus, ūs.
chariot,	currus, ūs.	sight,	vīsus, ūs.
divide,	dīvidō, 3.	take-away,	tollō, 3.
fear,	metus, ūs,	teeth,	morsus, ūs.
leap, a,	saltus, ūs,	victory,	victōria.
lofty,	excelsus, a, um.	wheel,	rota.
porch,	porticus, ūs, f.	witness,	testis, is, c.
Rhodes,	Rhodus, ī, f.		

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Acanthis hominēs cantū dēlectat. 2. Hominēs lusciniæ cantum māgnopere laudant. 3. In cornū taurī parva sedēbat musca. 4. Cervus laudābat cornua sua, erūra vituperābat. 5. In conventū bestiārum bellē saltāverat sīmius. 6. Hostēs in rēgem impetum ācerrimum faciunt. 7. Infāns fortissimus dracōnēs manibus necāvit. 8. Juvenis validissimus leōnem lacertōrum pressū exanimāvit. 9. Rēx cum māgnō exercitū iter facit in terram hostium. 10. Longa itinera exercitū nocēbant. 11. Miser poēta plūrimōs versūs philosophō recitāvit. Omissōs versūs laudāvit philosophus. 12. Puella frā-trem acubus pungit.

## II. Translate into Latin:

1. A lying fellow was boasting about a leap. No one has ever (*unquam*) surpassed my leap. Of the leap I have all the Rhodians [as] witnesses. [Said] one of the citizens: Here (*hic*), quoth he, is Rhōdes, do-your-leaping here [= here leap].  
 2. The sly driver takes-away the wheels of the chariot.  
 3. The sick man's hands scarcely (*vix*) carry food to [his] mouth. 4. The philosophers used-to-walk (Imperf.) in a lofty porch. 5. The victory of the army frees the citizens from [their] fear. 6. The sight is the keenest of all the senses. 7. The dog held the thief with [his] teeth. 8. The king divides the city into (*in w. Acc.*) wards [= tribes].

## XXI. FIFTH DECLENSION.

79. *The stem ends in e.* Nominative in s.\*

	MASC. AND FEM.	MASC.	FEMININE.
SING.—N.	diē-s, <i>day</i> . Pl.	diē-s,	SING. rē-s, <i>thing</i> . Pl. rē-s,
G.	diē-i,	diē-rum,	re-i, rē-rum,
D.	diē-i,	diē-bus,	re-i, rē-bus,
Ac.	die-m,	diē-s,	re-m, rē-s,
V.	diē-s,	diē-s,	rē-s, rē-s,
Abl.	diē.	diē-bus.	rē. rē-bus.

REMARKS.—1. The Plural is used throughout in three words only: *rēs*, *thing*; *diēs*, *day*; and in later Latin, *speciēs*, *appearance*. In some words, only Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural occur; others have no Plural at all.

2. The stem-vowel *e*, in the Genitive and Dative Singular, is *long* after a vowel and *short* after a consonant, as *speciēs*, Genitive *speciēi*; *rēs*, *thing*, G. *rēi*.

*Rule of Gender.*—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except *diēs* (which in the Singular is of the common gender, and in the Plural masculine), and the masculine *meridiēs*, *mid-day*.

## 80.

## V O C A B U L A R Y .

*Fifth Declension.*

aciēs,	<i>edge, line of battle.</i>	occāsus, ūs,	<i>setting.</i>
fidēs,	<i>faithfulness, honesty.</i>	piscis, is, m.	<i>fish.</i>
rēs familiāris,	<i>estate.</i>	vānus, a, um,	<i>vain.</i>
rēs pūblica,	<i>commonwealth, state.</i>		
spēs,	<i>hope.</i>	commotion,	mōtus, ūs.
		count,	numerō, 1.
aestās, ātis,	<i>summer.</i>	face,	faciēs, ēi.
amnis, is, m.	<i>river.</i>	frequent,	crēber, bra, brum.
brevis, e,	<i>short.</i>	learn,	discō, 3.
dēnsus, a, um,	<i>thick, dense.</i>	merchant,	mercātor, ōris.
dissipō, 1.	<i>squander.</i>	night,	nox, noctis, f.
ferus, a, um,	<i>wild.</i>	practice,	ūsus, ūs.
lacus, ūs,	<i>lake.</i>	weary,	fatigō, 1.
latrō, ōnis,	<i>robber.</i>		

\* The Genitive Singular of the Fifth Declension ends in -ei. (See p. 15.)

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Deus est dominus omnium rērum. 2. Ō bonī cīvēs, dēfendite rem pūblicam. 3. Fidēs multōrum servōrum Rōmānōrum māgna fuit. 4. Spem nōstram māgnopere fallis. (5) Acīēs hostium dēnsa est. 6. Spēs hominum saepe sunt vānac. 7. Occāsus sōlis finem facit diēi. 8. Acstāte diēs longiōrēs sunt quam hieme. 9. In vetere Graeciā multae rēs pūblicae fuērunt. 10. Rem familiārem dissipāvistī.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. We praise the faithfulness of the little mouse. 2. The long days weary the lazy youth. 3. In the winter the nights are longer than the days. 4. I do not remember the number of the days. 5. Frequent commotions injured the states of Greece. 6. The foolish (Superl.) boy praises the face of the more foolish girl. 7. We learn many things by practice. 8. The thief deceived the merchant by the appearance of honesty.

## III. Miscellaneous Examples for Translation :

1. Terra est māter omnium hominum. 2. Hiemps tempus est brevium diērum et longārum noctium. 3. Māgna est cōpia piscium in maribus, amnibus, lacubus. 4. Sōcratēs sapientissimus fuit omnium Graecōrum. 5. Latrō ferac bestiae similior est quam hominī. 6. Domus rēgis pulcherrima et magnificentissima est. 7. Omnēs hominēs peccant, deus nunquam peccāvit.

## XXII. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## 81.

## STEM FORMS.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
audi-ō,	audi-re,	audi-vī,	audi-tum, hear.

Learn Infinitive ; Indicative, Present and Imperfect ; 2d person Singular and Plural, 1st Imperative, Active.

## 82. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The stems in *i* follow in several forms the Third Conjugation, and take the same connecting vowels.

		ACTIVE.	
INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT.	
<i>Hear.</i>		<i>Be hearing, may hear.</i>	
SING.—1.	audi-ō,		audi-a-m,
	2. audi-s,		audi-ā-s,
	3. audi-t,		audi-a-t,
PLUR.—1.	audi-mus,		audi-ā-mus,
	2. audi-tis,		audi-ā-tis,
	3. audi-u-nt.		audi-a-nt.
		IMPERFECT.	
<i>Was hearing.</i>		<i>Were hearing, might hear.</i>	
SING.—1.	audi-ē-ba-m,		audi-re-m,
	2. audi-ē-bā-s,		audi-rē-s,
	3. audi-ē-ba-t,		audi-re-t,
PLUR.—1.	audi-ē-bā-mus,		audi-rē-mus,
	2. audi-ē-bā-tis,		audi-rē-tis,
	3. audi-ē-ba-nt.		audi-re-nt.
		FUTURE.	
<i>Shall hear.</i>			
SING.—1.	audi-a-m,		
	2. audi-ēs,		
	3. audi-e-t,		
PLUR.—1.	audi-ēs-mus,		
	2. audi-ēs-tis,		
	3. audi-e-nt.		
IMPERATIVE.			
FIRST.		SECOND.	
SING.—2.	audi, <i>hear thou,</i>	2.	audi-tō, <i>thou shalt hear.</i>
		3.	audi-tō, <i>he shall hear.</i>
PLUR.—2.	audi-te, <i>hear ye,</i>	2.	audi-tōte, <i>ye shall hear.</i>
		3.	audi-u-ntō, <i>they shall hear.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. N. audi-ē-n-s, G. audi-e-nt-is, *hearing.*

FUTURE. audi-tūr-us, -a, -um, *about to hear.*

## 83.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have heard, heard.**Have, may have, heard.*

SING.—1. audi-vī,

audi-ve-ri-m,

2. audi-vi-stī,

audi-ve-rī-s,

3. audi-vi-t,

audi-ve-ri-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-vi-mus,

audi-ve-rī-mus,

2. audi-vi-stis,

audi-ve-rī-tis,

3. audi-vē-runt.

audi-ve-ri-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had heard.**Had, might have, heard.*

SING.—1. audi-ve-ra-m,

audi-vi-sse-m,

2. audi-ve-rā-s,

audi-vi-ssē-s,

3. audi-ve-ra-t,

audi-vi-sse-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-ve-rā-mus,

audi-vi-ssē-mus,

2. audi-ve-rā-tis,

audi-vi-ssē-tis,

3. audi-ve-ra-nt.

audi-vi-sse-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have heard.*

SING.—1. audi-ve-r-ō,

2. audi-ve-rī-s,

3. audi-ve-ri-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-ve-rī-mus,

2. audi-ve-rī-tis,

3. audi-ve-ri-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. audi-re, *to hear.*PERFECT. audi-vi-sse, *to have heard.*FUTURE. audi-tūr-um, -am -um, esse, *to be about to hear.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [audi-re], *hearing, to hear.*G. audi-e-nd-i, *of hearing.*D. audi-e-nd-ō, *to, for hearing.*

Ac. [audi-re] (ad) audi-e-nd-um,

*[hearing, to hear. 1. audi-tum, to hear.*Abl. audi-e-nd-ō, *by hearing.*2. audi-tū, *to hear, in the hearing.*



## 84.

## VOCABULARY.

*Fourth Conjugation.*

custodiō,	<i>guard.</i>	placidē,	<i>calmly, sweetly.</i>
dormiō,	<i>sleep.</i>	pōcūm, I,	<i>cup.</i>
hauriō,	<i>draw.</i>	puerulus, I,	<i>little boy.</i>
nēsciō,	<i>not know, be ignorant of.</i>	sērō,	<i>too-late.</i>
oboediō,	<i>be obedient. (w. Dat.).</i>	servitūs, ūtis,	<i>slavery.</i>
saeviō,	<i>rage.</i>	sinus, ūs,	<i>bosom.</i>
sentiō,	<i>perceive, feel.</i>	voluptās, ātis,	<i>pleasure.</i>
serviō,	<i>be a slave, serve.</i>		
subveniō,	<i>come to the aid of (w. Dat.).</i>	bounty,	<i>mūnificentia.</i>
veniō,	<i>come.</i>	come-to,	<i>pervenīō ad (w. Acc.).</i>
abjiciō (ābicio) 3,	<i>throw away.</i>	hunger,	<i>famēs, is, f.</i>
circus, I,	<i>circus, arena.</i>	money,	<i>pecūnia.</i>
fera,	<i>wild (beast).</i>	school,	<i>schola.</i>
fōns, ntis, m.	<i>fountain.</i>	spice,	<i>condiō, 4.</i>

7

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English: ✓

1. Puerulus in mātris sinū dormit. 2. Ferae saeviēbant in circō. 3. Pater filiō cito subveniēbat. 4. Dormī placidē, ō fēlicissime puer. 5. Nullum sentīs dolōrem? rogāvit musca. 6. Puerulus aquam ē fonte manū hauriēbat. Videt philosophus et pōcūm abjicit. 7. Multās rēs nēscimus. 8. Oboediōte, ō cīvēs, lēgibus. 9. Sērō venīs in scholam. 10. Nōn sentiunt virī fortēs in aciē vulnera. 11. Sī voluptātī servīs, miseram servitūtem servīs. 12. Canis filium infantem rūsticī custodiēbat.

## II. Translate into Latin:

1. You are-ignorant-of many things. 2. All men feel the bounty of God. 3. The Lacedaemonians spiced [their] dinner by toil, by hunger, by thirst (*sitis* Abl. in -ī). 4. The money comes-to my father by right (*jūre*). 5. The soldiers are guarding the gates. 6. The lazy boy used-to-come (Imperf.) to (*in w. Acc.*) school too-late.

1

## PART II.

### XXIII. REVIEW OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

#### 85. 1. Review First Declension.

##### 2. Add these exceptions :

*Dea, goddess; filia, daughter; ambae, both, and duae, two,* have the form *-ābus*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural : *deābus, filiābus, ambābus, duābus*.

##### 3. Review Second Declension.

##### 4. Add these exceptions :

1.) In the Vocative Singular, *ie (je)* is commonly contracted into *i* in proper names in *-ius, -ēius (ējus), -āius (ājus)*, the accent remaining unchanged ; *Antōni, Tulli, Gāi, Vergīli. Filius, son, genius, genius,* and *meus, my*, form their Vocatives in like manner : *fīlī, genī, mī*.

2.) *Deus, God*, is irregular. Singular Vocative, *deus*. Plural Nominative *deī, diī, (dī)* ; Genitive, *deōrum, deum* ; Accusative, *deōs* ; Dative and Ablative (*deīs*), *diīs (dīs)*.

3.) The following have Gen. Singular in *iūs* and Dat. Singular in *i* :

<i>ūnus,</i>	<i>ullus,</i>	<i>nullus,</i>	<i>one,</i>	<i>any,</i>	<i>none.</i>
<i>sōlus,</i>	<i>tōtus,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>sole,</i>	<i>whole,</i>	<i>other.</i>
<i>uter,</i>	<i>alter,</i>	<i>neuter,</i>	<i>which of the two,</i>	<i>one of the two,</i>	<i>neither.</i>

G. *utrius, alterius, neutrius.*

SING.—N.	<i>nullus,</i>	<i>nulla,</i>	<i>nullum, none.</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alia,</i>	<i>aliud, other.</i>
G.	<i>nullius,</i>	<i>nullius,</i>	<i>nullius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>
D.	<i>nullī,</i>	<i>nullī,</i>	<i>nullī,</i>	<i>aliī,</i>	<i>aliī,</i>	<i>aliī,</i>
Acc.	<i>nullum,</i>	<i>nullam,</i>	<i>nullum,</i>	<i>alium,</i>	<i>aliam,</i>	<i>aliud,</i>
Abl.	<i>nullō,</i>	<i>nullā,</i>	<i>nullō.</i>	<i>aliō,</i>	<i>aliā,</i>	<i>aliō.</i>

The Plural is regular. Regular forms of the G. and D. sing. occur, but rarely.

86.

## VOCABULARY. ✓

animus, ī,	<i>mind.</i>	ēvītō, 1.	<i>avoid.</i>
āra,	<i>altar.</i>	immolō, 1.	<i>sacrifice.</i>
Athēniēnsis, is,	<i>Athenian.</i>	jactūra,	<i>loss.</i>
dēbilitō, 1.	<i>weaken.</i>	parēns, ntis, c.	<i>parent.</i>
Cerēs, ěris,	<i>Ceres, goddess of growth.</i>	Prōserpina,	<i>Proserpine, daughter of Ceres.</i>
commercium, ī,	<i>intercourse.</i>	tranquillitās, ātis, f.	<i>calmness.</i>
cōnsecrō, 1.	<i>consecrate.</i>	valētūdō, inis, f.	<i>health.</i>

apple,	pōmum, ī,	mellow,	mītis, e.
bring up,	ēducō, 1.	return thanks,	grātiās agere.
consulship,	cōnsulātus, ūs.	safety,	salūs, ūtis, fem.
excellently,	optimē.	traverse,	peragrō, 1.
last,	suprēmus, a, um.	world,	orbis (masc.) terrārum.

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate into English :

1. Parentēs māgnificentissima praemia filiīs et filiābus dōnābunt. 2. Athēniēnsēs Cererī et Prōserpinae deābus plūrimās ārās cōnsecrābant. 3. Mī fili, ēvītā commercia improbōrum. 4. Ō Canī, tuam animī tranquillitātem magnopere laudāmus. 5. Multī rēgēs filiās suās diīs immolāvērunt. 6. Ō bonī dī, servāte optimum imperātōrem. 7. Ūnius homīnis mors rem pūblicam servāvit. 8. Alterius crūris jactūra valētūdinem tōtīus corporis dēbilitābit.

## 11. Translate into Latin :

1. Why, O Gaius Marius, hast thou polluted thy last consulship with so-much (Superl. of *multus*) blood? 2. Thou hast brought up thy elder son excellently, O Cornelius. 3. The father will give [his] two younger daughters mellow (Superl.) apples. 4. The soldiers return thanks to the gods for (*prō* with Abl.) [their] safety. 5. I owe everything (*omnia*) to my father alone. 6. Hercules traversed the most-distant (*ultimus, a, um*) regions of the whole world. 7. To which-

of-the-two boys shall we give the beautiful (Superl.) book ?  
8. The army of each-of-the-two (*uterque*) generals (Sing.) put the enemy to flight.

☞ Here the teacher may take up Reading Lesson I., page 166.

## XXIV. CONJUGATION OF *Sum*—FIRST CONJUGATION—(FINISHED).

### 87. Conjugation of *Sum*, *I am*.

☞ For Indicative, Imperative, and Infinitive, see 27.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
<i>sim,</i>	<i>I be,</i>	<i>essem,</i>	<i>I were (forem),</i>
<i>sīs,</i>	<i>thou be,</i>	<i>essēs,</i>	<i>thou wert (forēs),</i>
<i>sit,</i>	<i>he, she, it be.</i>	<i>esset,</i>	<i>he were (foret).</i>
<i>sīmus,</i>	<i>we be,</i>	<i>essēmus,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
<i>sītis,</i>	<i>you be,</i>	<i>essētis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>
<i>sint,</i>	<i>they be.</i>	<i>essent,</i>	<i>they were (forent).</i>

#### PERFECT.

<i>fuerim,</i>	<i>I have, may have, been,</i>
<i>fuerīs,</i>	<i>thou have, mayst have, been,</i>
<i>fuerit,</i>	<i>he have, may have, been.</i>
<i>fuerīmus,</i>	<i>we have, may have, been,</i>
<i>fuerītis,</i>	<i>you have, may have, been,</i>
<i>fuerint,</i>	<i>they have, may have, been.</i>

#### PLUPERFECT.

<i>fuissem,</i>	<i>I had, might have, been,</i>
<i>fuisēs,</i>	<i>thou hadst, mightst have, been,</i>
<i>fuisset,</i>	<i>he had, might have, been.</i>
<i>fuissemus,</i>	<i>we had, might have, been,</i>
<i>fuisētis,</i>	<i>you had, might have, been,</i>
<i>fuisent,</i>	<i>they had, might have, been.</i>

88.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

For Active, see 31, 32.

		PASSIVE.	
		PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
INDICATIVE.			
<i>Am loved.</i>		<i>Be, may be, loved.</i>	
SING.—1.	amō-r,	ame-r,	
	2. amā-ris,	amē-ris,	
	3. amā-tur,	amē-tur,	
PLUR.—1.	amā-mur,	amē-mur,	
	2. amā-mini,	amē-mini,	
	3. ama-ntur.	ame-ntur.	
		IMPERFECT.	
<i>Was loved.</i>		<i>Were, might be, loved.</i>	
SING.—1.	amā-ba-r,	amā-re-r,	
	2. amā-bā-ris,	amā-rē-ris,	
	3. amā-bā-tur,	amā-rē-tur,	
PLUR.—1.	amā-bā-mur,	amā-rē-mur,	
	2. amā-bā-mini,	amā-rē-mini,	
	3. amā-ba-ntur.	amā-re-ntur.	
		FUTURE.	
<i>Shall be loved.</i>			
SING.—1.	amā-bo-r,		
	2. amā-be-ris,		
	3. amā-bi-tur,		
PLUR.—1.	amā-bi-mur,		
	2. amā-bi-mini,		
	3. amā-bu-ntur.		
		IMPERATIVE.	
FIRST.		SECOND.	
SING.—2.	amā-re, <i>be thou loved.</i>	2. amā-tor, <i>thou shalt be loved.</i>	
		3. amā-tor, <i>he shall be loved.</i>	
PLUR.—2.	amā-mini, <i>be ye loved.</i>	3. ama-ntor, <i>they shall be loved.</i>	
		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	amā-rī,	<i>to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	amā-t-um, -am, -um, esse,	<i>to have been loved.</i>	
FUT.	amā-t-um, irī,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>	
F. P.	amā-t-um, -am, -um, fore.		



## 89.

## ✓ FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have been loved.**Have, may have, been loved.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um, sum,	amā-t-us, -a, -um, sim,
2.	es,	sīs,
3.	est,	sit,
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a, sumus,	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a, simus,
2.	estis,	sītis,
3.	sunt,	sint,

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had been loved.**Had, might have, been loved.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um, eram,	amā-t-us, -a, -um, essem,
2.	erās,	essēs,
3.	erat,	esset,
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a, erāmus,	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a, essēmus,
2.	erātis,	essētis,
3.	erant,	essent,

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been loved.*

SING.—1.	am-ā-t-us, -a, -um, erō,
2.	eris,
3.	erit,
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a, erimus,
2.	eritis,
3.	erunt.

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. amā-t-us, -a, -um, *loved.*GERUNDIVE. ama-nd-us, -a, -um, *(one) to be loved.*

**90. Rules of Syntax:** 1. The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb.

Active : **Magister laudat**, *The teacher praises.*

Passive : **Discipulus laudātur**, *The pupil is praised.*

2. The Agent of the Passive is put in the Ablative with **ab** or **ā** : **ab** before vowels and **h, ā** or **ab** before consonants.

**Discipulus laudātur ā magistrō**, *The pupil is praised by the teacher.*

3. The Instrument is put in the Ablative.

**Fūr ā famulīs fustibus mulcātur**, *The thief is mauled BY the servants WITH cudgels.*

Animals as independent agents are treated as persons:

**Vulpēs ā leōne dēvorāta est**, *The fox has been devoured by the lion.*

NOTE.—In English, when the agent is not expressed, the so-called Present Passive is often really a Perfect. Hence the use of *am being, is being*, to make the meaning clear. When the agent is expressed the form is regularly present.

**Puella corōnātur**, *The girl is (being) crowned.*

**Puella corōnāta est**, *The girl is (has been, was) crowned.*

**Puella ā mātře corōnātur**, *The girl is (being) crowned by (her) mother.*

**Puella ā mātře corōnāta est**, *The girl has been (was) crowned by her mother.*

## 91.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>cēteri</b> , ae, a,	<i>the rest, all the others.</i>	<b>natō</b> , 1.	<i>swim.</i>
<b>condōnō</b> , 1.	<i>grant.</i>	<b>percussor</b> , <b>ōris</b> ,	<i>murderer.</i>
<b>damnō</b> , 1.	<i>condemn.</i>	<b>repudiō</b> , 1.	<i>reject.</i>
<b>exāminō</b> , 1.	<i>examine.</i>	<b>rōstrum</b> , <b>ī</b> ,	<i>beak, bill.</i>
<b>expīrō</b> , 1.	<i>expire.</i>	<b>suffōcō</b> , 1.	<i>choke, drown.</i>
		<b>unda</b> ,	<i>wave.</i>

pitchfork, **furca**.

rejoice,

**gaudeō**, 2.

wrong (do w.)

**peccō**, 1.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Culex ā passere dēvorātur; passer ab accipitre dilacerātur; accipiter ab aquilā dilaniātur; aquilae collum ā vēnātōre sagittā perforātur. 2. Sī bonum rēgem repudiābitis, ā malō dēvorābiminī. 3. Cervus ā canibus dilacerātur. Exspirāns dicit: Cornua laudāvī, cornibus necātus sum. 4. Vīta miserō vespertiliōnī condōnāta est. 5. Sī natāre tentābīs, undīs suffōcāberis. 6. Graculus ā cēteris avibus rōstrīs fugātus est. 7. Servī mendācēs damnantor. 8. Percussor exāminātus est.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. Phylax puts Nero to flight: Nero is put to flight by Phylax. 2. The stork was killing the frogs; the frogs were killed by the stork; the log has been rejected by the frogs. 3. If you shall praise your friend, you will be praised by your friend. 4. The strong farmer put (Perf.) the thief to flight with a pitchfork; the thief was stabbed with a pitchfork. 5. If the servant does wrong [= shall have done wrong], he will be beaten. 6. The song of the nightingale has been praised by many poets. 7. If we are [= shall be] praised, we shall rejoice.

☞ Reading Lesson II. p. 166.

## XXV. SYNTAX OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**92.** 1. *The Subjunctive Mood* is so called because it is usually subjoined (sub'ungō, *I subjoin*) to another word or sentence. When it stands alone it is used

1.) To express a *wish* or a *command*. The commanding Subjunctive is called the Imperative Subjunctive; the wishing Subjunctive is called the Optative Subjunctive.

Imperative Subjunctive: **Amēmus**, *let us love*; **amet**, *let him love*.

Optative Subjunctive: **Fēlix sis**, *may you be happy*.

2.) To express what the speaker thinks likely. This is called the Potential Subjunctive.

Potential Subjunctive : **Amet**, *He may, might, could, would, should, must love.*

2. The Imperative Subjunctive is best studied with the Imperative. See 137.

3. The Optative Subjunctive often takes the sign **Utinam**, *would that.*

1.) When the wish is for something *future*, use the *Present* Subjunctive, with or without **Utinam**.

2.) When the wish is for something *present*, use the *Imperfect* Subjunctive, with **Utinam**.

3.) When the wish is for something *past*, use the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive, with **Utinam**.

As the present and the past cannot be changed, wishes for present and past are decided against the speaker.

4. The Negative of the Optative Subjunctive is regularly **nē**.

(**Utinam**) **magister** **discipulōs** **Utinam** **magister** **discipulōs** **laudā-**  
**laudet,** **ret,**

*May the teacher praise the scholars. Would that the teacher praised (were praising) the scholars.*

(**Utinam**) **nē** **discipulōs** **vitupe-** **Utinam** **magister** **discipulōs** **laudā-**  
**ret,** **visset,**

*May he not chide the scholars. Would that the teacher had praised the scholars.*

## 93.

## V O C A B U L A R Y .

<b>alibī,</b>	<i>elsewhere.</i>	<b>diūtius,</b>	<i>longer.</i>
<b>auscultō, 1.</b>	<i>listen.</i>	<b>fraudō, 1.</b>	<i>cheat. [roughly</i>
<b>cōnsiderō, 1.</b>	<i>consider.</i>	<b>probē,</b>	<i>properly, thor-</i>
<b>diligentius,</b>	<i>more carefully.</i>	<b>tantum,</b>	<i>so much.</i>
<b>disputō, 1.</b>	<i>debate.</i>	<b>vīvus, a, um,</b>	<i>alive.</i>

boastful,	glōriōsus, a, um.	honest,	probus, a, um.
breeze,	aura.	maul,	mulcō, 1.
content,	contentus, a, um.	punishment,	poena.
convoke,	convocō, 1.	release,	liberō, 1.
early-in-the-morning,	māne.	refresh,	recreō, 1.
enter,	intrō (in w. Acc.).	spider,	arānea.
exclaim,	exclāmō, 1.		

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Utinam pater fābulam novam narret. 2. Utinam in lītore maris ambulārem. 3. Sītis fēlicissimī. 4. Utinam latrō vīvus cremētur. 5. Utinam nē tantum disputārent orātōrēs. 6. Utinam essem rēx. 7. Utinam rēs diūtius cōnsiderāta esset. 8. Utinam pessimus poēta longissimum carmen alibī recitet. 9. Utinam diligēntius auscultāvissētis. 10. Vespertiliō dicit : ✓ Nē vīvam, sī nōn probē fraudāvī utramque fēlem.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The wretched (Superl.) frogs exclaimed : Would that we had not demanded another king. 2. Said the unhappy (Superl.) fly : Would that I had not entered into the cruel (Superl.) spider's house. 3. Would that you had been convoked early-in-the-morning. 4. Would that a breeze were refreshing the fatigued traveller. 5. Would that the lazy (Superl.) servant were thoroughly mauled by [his] master. 6. May we be content. 7. May the careless girl be released from the heavy (Superl.) punishment. 8. May the boastful soldier be overcome by the honest farmer.

☞ Reading Lesson I., p. 167.



XXVI. PRONOUNS—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—(CONTINUED).

94.

	SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
SING.—N.	ego,	<i>I,</i>	
G.	meī,	<i>of me,</i>	meus, -a, -um, <i>mine or my.</i>
D.	mihī,	<i>to, for me,</i>	Voc. (masc.) mī.
Acc.	mē,	<i>me,</i>	
Abl.	mē,	<i>from, with, by me.</i>	
PLUR.—N.	nōs,	<i>we,</i>	
G.	nōstri,	<i>of us,</i>	
	nōstrum,		nōster, nōstra, nōstrum, <i>our</i>
D.	nōbīs,	<i>to, for us,</i>	<i>or ours.</i>
Acc.	nōs,	<i>us,</i>	
Abl.	nōbīs,	<i>from, with, by us.</i>	
SING.—N. V.	tū,	<i>thou,</i>	
G.	tui,	<i>of thee,</i>	
D.	tibī,	<i>to, for thee,</i>	tuus, a, um, <i>thy or thine.</i>
Acc.	tē,	<i>thee,</i>	
Abl.	tē,	<i>from, with, by thee.</i>	
PLUR.—N. V.	vōs,	<i>ye or you,</i>	
G.	vestri,	<i>of you,</i>	
	vestrum,		vester, vestra, vestrum,
D.	vōbīs,	<i>to, for you,</i>	<i>your or yours.</i>
Acc.	vōs,	<i>you,</i>	
Abl.	vōbīs,	<i>from, with, by you.</i>	

With the Personal Pronouns cum is put after the Abl. and joined with it. So mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum.

**95. Rules of Syntax:** 1. Neuter Adjectives are freely used in Latin as substantives in so-called agreement with their gender (*thing*). The Plural is often used where we prefer the Singular.

Multa bona, *Many good things* (blessings).

Plūrima mala, (*Very*) *many evil things* (evils).

Vēra, *the truth.* Omnia, *everything.*

2. *Sī, if*, is used with the Imperfect Subjunctive, when the supposed case *is* not so.

*Sī, if*, is used with the Pluperfect Subjunctive, when the supposed case *was* not so.

<b>Dominus,</b> The master, (If the master—he)	<b>sī</b> if	{ adesset, he were present,  adfuisset, he had been present,	<b>servum</b> slave	{ verberāret. would be flogging.  verberāvisset, would-have-flogged.

☞ The common subject of the dependent and the leading clause, is regularly put first in Latin.

### VOCABULARY.

feign, *simulō*, 1.  
 gentle, *lēnis*, e.

industrious *sēdulus*, a, um.  
 toil, *labōrō*, 1.

### EXERCISES.

#### I. Translate into English :

1. *Utinam nē essēs irātus. Sī irātus essem, nōn verberārēris.* 2. *Utinam Marcus rēx esset. Marcus, sī rēx esset, omnēs latrōnēs liberāret.* 3. *Utinam discipulī diligentius auscultāvissent. Sī diligentius auscultāvissent, maximīs ā nōbīs praemiīs dōnātī essent.* 4. *Avēs, sī āvolāvissent, ā vōbīs necātae nōn essent.* 5. *Vespertiliō, sī nōmen servāvisset, fēlēs nōn fraudāvisset.* 6. *Musca incauta, sī rem diūtius cōsiderāvisset, in arāneae domum nōn intrāret.* 7. *Sī pater adesset, tū agrōtum nōn simulārēs.* 8. *Sī omnia mea tēcum asportārēs, nōn multa asportārēs.*

#### II. Translate into Latin :

1. If you had toiled, you would have been happier. 2. If you were industrious, you would be praised. 3. Would that the master had chastised the slave. If the slave had been chastised he would not have been lazy. 4. If I had not been cheated by you, I should have awarded to you great (Superl.) praise. 5. If the boy were walking on the shore, he would be refreshed by the gentle breeze. 6. If the ship were in harbor, the wicked sailors would not call on God.

## XXVII. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—(CONTINUED).

**96. Rules of Syntax :** 1. *Ut, in order that*, takes the Subjunctive ; the Present after a Principal Tense, the Imperfect after an Historical Tense.

The Principal Tenses are the Present, Perfect (when translated by *have*), Future, and Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses are the Imperfect, Perfect (when translated by *did*), and Pluperfect.

The Present Tense is often treated as past time (Historical Present).

Instead of using *in order that*, it is often much more natural to translate by *to* and the Infinitive.

The negative of *ut, in order that*, is *nē, in order that not, lest (not to)*.

<b>Dēvolat</b> is-flying-down	}	<b>vultur</b> vulture	<b>ut</b> that	<b>accipitrem</b> hawk	}	<b>dēvoret,</b> he may devour.	} to devour.
<b>Dēvolābat</b> was-flying-down							

<b>Ōrat</b> is-begging	}	<b>vespertiliō</b> bat	<b>fēlem</b> cat	<b>ut</b> that	<b>vitam</b> life	}	<b>condōnet,</b> he spare,	} to spare.
<b>Ōrābat</b> was-begging								

<b>Fugat</b> is-putting to flight	}	<b>Phylax</b> Phylax	<b>Nerōnem</b> Nero	<b>nē</b> lest	<b>carnem</b> flesh	}	<b>dēvoret.</b> he devour.
<b>Fugāvit</b> put to flight							

<b>Ōrat</b> is-begging	}	<b>puella</b> girl	<b>magistrum</b> master	<b>nē</b> lest (that not)	<b>frātre</b> brother	}	<b>verberet,</b> he flog,	} not to flog.
<b>Ōrābat</b> was-begging								

<b>Ōrat</b> is-begging	}	<b>puella</b> girl	<b>magistrum</b> master	<b>ut</b> that	<b>frāter</b> brother	}	<b>poenā liberētur.</b> from punishment be released.
<b>Ōrābat</b> was-begging					<b>nē</b> lest (that not)		<b>frāter</b> brother

2. *Cum, as, since, when*, takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive when used of the Past, the Imperfect Subjunctive when the action is going on, the Pluperfect when it is finished.

Here it is often well to translate the Imperfect Subjunctive by the English Present Participle, and the Pluperfect Subjunctive by the English Perfect Participle.

Senex, The old man, (As the old man, he)	cum as	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fatigārētur,} \\ \text{he was getting weary,} \\ \text{fatigātus esset,} \\ \text{he had become weary,} \end{array} \right.$	mortem death	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{invocābat.} \\ \text{was-invoking,} \\ \text{invocāvit.} \\ \text{invoked.} \end{array} \right.$	(was for invoking).

## 97.

## VOCABULARY.

Biās, antis,	<i>B.</i> ( <i>prop. name</i> ).	opera,	<i>work, endeavor.</i>
dō (dāre, dedī, dātum),	<i>give, put.</i>	operam dare,	<i>endeavor.</i>
excidium, ī.	<i>destruction.</i>	reconciliō, 1.	<i>reconcile.</i>

despair (be in)	dēspērō, 1.	rid (get rid)	liberārī.
distance (at a)	procul.	stand,	stō (stāre, stetī).
gnaw,	rōdō, 3.	story,	fābula.
Lewis,	Ludovīcus, ī.	tempest,	tempestās, ātis, f.
nearly,	prope.	toss,	jactō, 1.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Vēnātor sagittam ēmittit ut vulturem necet. 2. Vēnātor sagittās ēmittēbat ut vulturem necāret. 3. Lupus in gregem irrumpit ut ovēs dīlaniet. 4. Puella abigēbat muscās nē parvulum frātrem cruciārent. 5. Ōrō tē nē simulēs aegrōtum. 6. Vespertiliō nōmen mūtāvit nē necārētur. 7. Pater operam dat ut filiōs reconciliet. 8. Bestiae postulāvērunt ut sīmius rēx creārētur. 9. In excidiō urbis, cum amīcī Biantem philosophum ōrārent ut suās rēs asportāret, recūsāvit. Omnia mea, inquit, mēcum portō. 10. Cum omnēs rānae alium rēgem postulāvissent, Jūppiter stultās rānās rīdēbat.

## II. Translate into Latin:

1. The mouse was gnawing the snares in order to set the lion free. 2. The fox was standing at a distance to keep from being devoured [= that he might not be devoured] by the lion. 3. The foolish frogs demand that another king be given to them (*sibi*). 4. The old man invoked death with a loud voice to get rid of all evils. 5. As we were-in-despair about the life of our dear mother, we began-to-weep (Imperf.). 6. As the ship was tossed by a tempest on the high seas (Sing.) the sailors called on God. 7. As Lewis was trying to swim, he was (Perf.) nearly drowned. 8. I begged the teacher to tell me a story. 9. We begged our mother to tell us a story.

☞ Reading Lesson IV., p. 167. ✓

## XXVIII. SECOND CONJUGATION.

☞ For Active, see 45-48 and review through 49.

98. Notice 1. Very few verbs of the Second Conjugation follow *dēleō*.

So *fle-ō, flē-re, flē-vī, flē-tum, weep.*  
*imple-ō, implē-re, implē-vī, implē-tum, fill.*

2. Most of them follow *moneō*.

3. A few form the Supine without *i*.

So *doce-ō, docē-re, doc-uī, doc-tum, teach.*

4. Many of them have no Supine.

So *late-ō, latē-re, lat-uī, lie hid.*

5. Many of them change to the Third Conjugation in the Perfect and Supine.

So *move-ō, movē-re, mōv-i, mō-tum, move.*

Anna C. Waterman.



## 99.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am destroyed.**Be, may be, destroyed.*

SING.—1. dēle-o-r, (mone-o-r, etc.)	dēle-a-r, (mone-a-r, etc.)
2. dēlē-ris,	dēle-ā-ris,
3. dēlē-tur,	dēle-ā-tur,
PLUR.—1. dēlē-mur,	dēle-ā-mur,
2. dēlē-mini,	dēle-ā-mini,
3. dēle-ntur.	dēle-a-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was destroyed.**Were destroyed.*

SING.—1. dēlē-ba-r, (monē-ba-r, etc.)	dēlē-re-r, (monē-re-r, etc.)
2. dēlē-bā-ris,	dēlē-rē-ris,
3. dēlē-bā-tur,	dēlē-rē-tur,
PLUR.—1. dēlē-bā-mur,	dēlē-rē-mur,
2. dēlē-bā-mini,	dēlē-rē-mini,
3. dēlē-ba-ntur.	dēlē-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be destroyed.*

SING.—1. dēlē-bo-r, (monē-bo-r, etc.)
2. dēlē-be-ris,
3. dēlē-bi-tur,
PLUR.—1. dēlē-bi-mur,
2. dēlē-bi-mini,
3. dēlē-bu-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

## FIRST.

## SECOND.

SING.—2. dēlē-re, <i>be thou destroy-</i>	2. dēlē-tor, <i>thou shalt be destroyed.</i>
(monē-re, etc.) [ed.]	3. dēlē-tor <i>he shall be destroyed.</i>
PLUR.—2. dēlē-mini, <i>be ye destroy-</i>	3. dēle-ntor, <i>they shall be destroyed.</i>
(monē-mini, etc.) [ed.]	

## 100.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
-------------	--	--------------

PERFECT.

<i>Have been destroyed, was destroyed.</i>		<i>Have, may have, been destroyed.</i>	
SING.—1. dēlē-t-us, -a, um,	sum,	dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	sim,
	(moni-t-us, etc.)		(moni-t-us, etc.)
2.	es,		sīs,
3.	est,		sit,
PLUR.—1. dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	sumus,	dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	simus,
	(moni-t-ī, etc.)		(moni-t-ī, etc.)
2.	estis,		sītis,
3.	sunt.		sint.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Had been destroyed.</i>		<i>Had, might have, been destroyed.</i>	
SING.—1. dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	eram,	dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	essem,
	(moni-t-us, etc.)		(moni-t-us, etc.)
2.	erās,		essēs,
3.	erat,		esset,
PLUR.—1. dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	erāmus,	dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	essēmus,
	(moni-t-ī, etc.)		(moni-t-ī, etc.)
2.	erātis,		essētis,
3.	erant.		essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>Shall have been destroyed.</i>	
SING.—1. dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	erō,
	(moni-t-us, etc.)
2.	eris,
3.	erit,
PLUR.—1. dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	erimus,
	(moni-t-ī, etc.)
2.	eritis,
3.	erunt.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. dēlē-rī,	to be destroyed.	(monē-rī.)
PERF. dēlē-t-um, -am, -um,	esse,	to have been destroyed.
		(moni-t-um.)
FUT. dēlē-t-um, irī,	to be about to be destroyed.	(moni-t-um irī.)
F. Pf. dēlē-t-um, -am, -um,	fore.	(moni-t-um, etc.)

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	destroyed.	(moni-t-us, etc.)
GERUNDIVE. dēle-nd-us, -a, um,	[one] to be destroyed.	(monē-nd-us.)

Bertie Rocky ✓

## 101.

## VOCABULARY.

benignus, a, um,	<i>kind.</i>	indūtus, a, um,	<i>dressed.</i>
bonum, I,	<i>good thing.</i>	impleō, ēvi, ētum,	<i>fill.</i>
ferē,	<i>almost.</i>	levātiō, ōnis, f.	<i>relief.</i>
gēns, ntis, f.	<i>nation, tribe.</i>	lustrātiō, ōnis, f.	<i>review.</i>
herbōsus, a, um,	<i>grassy.</i>	mundus, ī,	<i>world.</i>

artist,	artifex, icis.	Latona,	Lātōna, ae.
bravely,	fortiter.	Lycian,	Lycius, a, um.
displease,	displaceō, 2. (w. Dat.)	silent (be),	sileō, 2.
employ,	adhibeō, 2.	thankful (be),	grātiā habeō.
hold out,	praebeō, 2.	various,	varius, a, um.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Catulus callidus ā benīgnō dominō permulcētur. 2. Multis hominibus nimius labor nocuit. 3. Puer bonus parentibus semper pārēbit. 4. Omnēs ferē gentēs Rōmānis pārūrunt. 5. Militum lustrātiō ab imperātōre habētur. 6. Asinus, leōnis pelle indūtus, omnēs bestiās terruit. 7. Fūrēs ā validō agricolā tenēbantur. 8. Nīdus corvōrum ā pueris delētus est. 9. Vidēte prāta herbōsa. 10. Pāvōnis imāgō parvulō puerō placuit. 11. Deus mundum omnibus bonīs implēyit. 12. Omnia remedia adhibita sunt sed nullam levātiōnem praebeūrunt.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The Romans employed (Perf.) Greek artists for (ad) various works. 2. I shall be thankful to you, if you will be silent. 3. Let the magistrate warn the citizens. 4. Let the citizens be warned by the magistrate. 5. The punishment of the brave soldier displeased the army. 6. The Lycian peasants kept (Perf.) the goddess Latona away from the water. The angry goddess turned (=changed) the peasants into frogs. 7. The boy bravely held [his] hands out for the blows. 8. The long peace had injured the state.

XXIX. SECOND CONJUGATION—(CONTINUED).

*102. Use of the Subjunctive. Comp. 95-96.*

PARADIGMS.

1. Si pater monēret, pārērem,  
If father were admonishing, I should obey, (be obedient).

Si pater monuisset, pāruiissem.  
If father had admonished, I should have obeyed.

2. Dominus Master	{	verberat flogs  verberābat flogged	}	servum ut praeceptis slave that (to) directions	{	pārēat, he obey,  pārēret, he should obey,	}	to make him obey.
----------------------	---	--	---	--	---	--	---	----------------------

Magister Teacher	{	monet admonishes  monēbat admonished	}	discipulōs ut praecepta scholars that directions	{	teneant, they remember,  tenērent, they remember, (should remember),	}	to remember.
---------------------	---	--	---	---	---	---	---	--------------

Māter Mother	puerō to boy	mālum apple	{	dat gives  dedit gave	}	nē lest	{	fleat, he weep,  flēret, he weep (should weep),	}	to keep him from weeping.
-----------------	-----------------	----------------	---	-----------------------------------	---	------------	---	--	---	------------------------------

Māter Mother	puerō boy	{	suādet tries to persuade  suādēbat tried to persuade	}	nē that not	{	fleat, he weep,  flēret, he weep (should weep),	}	not to weep.
-----------------	--------------	---	--	---	----------------	---	--	---	--------------

3. Cum urbs dēlērētur, mātēs infantēs servābant.  
As the city was destroyed, mothers infants were preserving.

Cum mūrus urbis dēlētus esset, cīvēs dēspērāvērunt.  
As wall of-city had been destroyed, citizens despaired.

103.

VOCABULARY. ✓

admoneō, 2.	admonish, warn.	coepī, I have begun, I began.
agō, 3.	plead.	compleō, 2. fill, adorn.
appropinquō, 1.	approach.	ēgregius, a, um, excellent.
attentus, a, um,	attentive.	jūcundus, a, um, amusing, charming.
calculus, ī,	(stone) piece.	Jūnō, ōnis, f. consort of Jupiter.
causa,	cause, case.	miser cordia, pity, compassion.

numerō, 1.	<i>count.</i>	quoque,	<i>also.</i>
parum,	<i>too-little, not.</i>	sic,	<i>so.</i>
paulisper,	<i>a little while.</i>	templum, i,	<i>temple.</i>
pictūra,	<i>painting.</i>	trucidō, 1.	<i>butcher.</i>
praebeō, 2.	<i>lend.</i>	victōria,	<i>victory.</i>

---

apple,	mālum, i.	pluck-out,	ēvellō, 3.
bag,	pēra.	question,	interrogātum, i.
flee,	fugiō, 3.	silent be,	taceō, 2.
instruct,	praecipiō, 3. (w. Dat.)	stick-in,	inhaereō, 2. (w. Dat.)
old man,	senex, senis.	urge,	suādeō, 2. (w. Dat.)

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Saepe orātōrēs operam dant ut misericordiam moveant. 2. Cum leō caudam movēret, omnēs mulierēs clāmābant. 3. Canius, cum vidēret centuriōnem appropinquantem, numerāvit calculōs et orāvit centuriōnem ut testis esset suae victōriac. 4. Dēmosthenēs, cum jūdicēs parum attentōs vidēret, orāvit ut paulisper sibi aurēs praebērent. 5. Cīvēs ut templum Jūnōnis ēgregiis pictūris complērent clārissimōs pictōres adhibuerunt. 6. Sī urbs dēlēta esset, omnēs infantēs trucidātī essent. 7. Sī mē monūissēs, perīculum ēvitāvissem. 8. Fugiunt fūrēs nē ā militibus teneantur. 9. Fugiēbant puerī nē ab irātō agricolā tenērentur. 10. Biās, cum esset admonitus ut rēs suās asportāret, rīdēre coepit.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. When Androclus saw a splinter sticking in the lion's paw (= foot), he tried to pluck [it] out. 2. Marcus Piso used-to-instruct (Imperf.) his (*suus*) servants not to answer except (*nisi*) to (*ad*) questions. 3. Listen, boys, that I may teach you (Acc.) a charming story. 4. The old man urged me not to injure my health. 5. If you were lending me [your] ears, I would not be silent. 6. If I were accustomed to ask for help, I would try to move [your] compassion. 7. When



the boys had filled [their] bags with apples, they began to run [= flee]. 8. If you had pleased [your] teacher, you would not have displeased [your] parents.

☞ Reading Lesson VI., p. 168.

*Abbie and Ann - a Waterman*

XXX.—THIRD DECLENSION.—RULES OF GENDER.

104. *Rules of Gender* of the Stems in l, n, r, and s.

1. L. Stems in l are masculine: sōl, *sun*, sōlis.

Except the neuters mel, *honey*, mellis; fel, *gall*, fellis.

2. N. I.—Masculine are nouns in -ō,

Save those in -dō, -gō, and -iō,

With carō, *flesh*, but ōrdō, cardō

Are masculine, with ligō, margō,

Add harpagō, and in -iō,

All real things like pūgiō.

Ōrdō, *rank*; cardō, *hinge*; ligō, (ōnis) *mattock*; margō, *border*; harpagō, (ōnis) *grappling-hook*; pūgiō, *dagger*; vespertiliō, *bat*; titiō, *firebrand*.

II.—Nouns in -en (men) are neuter.

Pecten, *comb*, is masculine.

3. R. Words in -er and or are masculine, those in ur neuter.

The only feminine is arbor.

Neuters are: fār, nectar, marmor,

Aequor, iter, acer, piper,

Verber, ūber, vēr, cadāver,

Ador, tūber, and papāver.

Acer, *maple*; ador, *spelt*; aequor, *sea*; arbor, *tree*; cadāver, *dead body*; fār, *spelt*; iter, *journey*; marmor, *marble*; nectar, *nectar*; papāver, *poppy*; piper, *pepper*; tūber, *tumor*; ūber, *teat*; vēr, *spring*; verbera, *blows*.

4. S. Masculine are nouns in **-is** (-eris) and **-ōs**, **-ōris**.

Except **ōs**, *mouth*, **ōris**, which is neuter.

Neuter are nouns in **us** (-eris, **ōris**) and in **-ūs**, **-ūris**.

Except **tellūs**, *earth*, **tellūris**, fem.

**lepus**, *hare*, **leporis**, masc., and **mūs**, *mouse*, **mūris**,  
masc.

**105. Rules of Syntax:** 1. By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another which contains it.

**Cicerō** **ōrātor**, *Cicero the orator.*

2. The word in apposition agrees with the principal word in number and case.

**Cicerōnis** **ōrātōris**, *of Cicero the orator.*  
**Cicerōnī** **ōrātōrī**, *to Cicero the orator.*  
**Cicerōnem** **ōrātōrem**, *Cicero the orator.*  
**Cicerōnēs** **puerī**, *(The Ciceros the boys) the little Ciceros.*

**106.**

## V O C A B U L A R Y .

<b>amoenus</b> , a, um,	<i>pleasant.</i>	<b>latus</b> , eris,	<i>side, flank.</i>
<b>celebrō</b> , 1.	<i>celebrate.</i>	<b>nātiō</b> , ōnis,	<i>nation.</i>
<b>Campānia</b> ,	<i>part of Italy.</i>	<b>objiciō</b> (ōbiciō), 3.	<i>oppose, present.</i>
<b>cōnscendō</b> , 3.	<i>mount.</i>	<b>obscurus</b> , a, um,	<i>obscure.</i>
<b>error</b> , ōris,	<i>mistake.</i>	<b>origō</b> , inis,	<i>origin.</i>
<b>ēveniō</b> , 4.	<i>ensue.</i>	<b>patrō</b> , 1.	<i>perform.</i>
<b>ferus</b> , a, um,	<i>savage.</i>	<b>temerē</b> ,	<i>rashly. [torious.</i>
<b>fessus</b> , a, um,	<i>wearry.</i>	<b>victrix</b> , icis,	<i>(conqueress) vic-</i>
<b>fūnestus</b> , a, um,	<i>fatal.</i>	<b>vastus</b> , a, um,	<i>vast.</i>
<b>intellegō</b> , 3.	<i>perceive.</i>	<b>ventus</b> , i,	<i>wind.</i>

---

bitter,	<b>amārus</b> , a, um.	naked,	<b>nūdus</b> , a, um.
cold,	<b>frigidus</b> , a, um.	neglected,	<b>neglētus</b> , a, um.
defile,	<b>foedō</b> , 1.	raw,	<b>crūdus</b> , a, um.
find,	<b>reperiō</b> , 4.	silly,	<b>īnsulsus</b> , a, um.
meat,	<b>carō</b> , carnis.	sweet,	<b>dulcis</b> , e.
murder,	<b>jugulō</b> , 1.	unjust,	<b>injūstus</b> , a, um.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

(After substituting the proper form of the adjectives in parentheses).

1. (Multus) hominēs (grātus) m ū rem laudant, (parvus) liberātōrem (māgnus) leōnis. 2. Cervus moribundus (fūnestus) errōrem intellegit. 3. (Fessus) viātōrēs asinum in (vastus) sōlitūdine cōspiciunt. (Māgnus) certāmen ēvenit. 4. Longum iter (dēbilis) mīlitis corpus cōficiēbat. 5. (Timidus) pāstor arborem (altus) cōnsceudit ut (māgnus) multitūdinem latrōnum ēvitet. 6. Fēlēs victrix (miser) vespertiliōnem corripit. 7. Rūsticus canem fidēlem (acūtus) ligōne necāvit. Paenitentia temerē (patrātus) facinoris sēra fuit. 8. Montēs (māgnus) latus ventis objiciunt. 9. Poētae cum (summus) admīrātiōne hominum vēr (novus) celebrant. 10. (Multus) nātiōnum orīgō (obscūrus) est. 11. (Ferus) Scythārum mōrēs Graecis displicēbant. 12. Lītus Campāniae (amoenissimus) est

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The silly poems of the great orator are laughed at by all. 2. King Pyrrhus finds in the road the naked corpse of a murdered man. 3. Many tribes live on (Abl.) raw meat. 4. The flowers are very grateful to the sick girls. 5. Cold ashes defile the neglected altars of the gods. 6. The stag reviled [his] slender legs. 7. The careless boy licks the biting pepper with [his] tongue. 8. The immense size of the lion frightens the spectators. 9. The general refuses to keep the unjust treaties. 10. Honey is sweet, gall is bitter

*Lizzie Bodwell*

## XXXI. PREPOSITIONS.

**107. Prepositions:** 1. Prepositions take the Ablative and the Accusative :

The Ablative for *whence* and *where*,  
The Accusative for *whither*!

2. These ten prepositions take the Ablative alone :


**ā** (ab), absque, cum, cōram,  
**dē**, **ē** (ex), prae, prō, sine, tenus.

<b>Ā</b> , ab, and abs, <i>off, of, from, by</i> (opposed to ad). Before vowels and <b>h</b> , <b>ab</b> ; before consonants, <b>ā</b> or <b>ab</b> ; <b>abs</b> , used chiefly before <b>tē</b> , <i>thee</i> .	<b>Ex</b> , <b>ē</b> , <i>out of, from</i> (opposed to in), <i>according to, by</i> . Before vowels and <b>h</b> , <b>ex</b> . Before consonants, <b>ē</b> or <b>ex</b> .
<b>Absque</b> ( <i>off</i> ) <i>without</i> (antiquated).	<b>Prae</b> , <i>in front of, side by side with, for</i> (preventive cause).
<b>Cōram</b> , <i>face to face with, in the presence of</i> .	<b>Prō</b> , <i>before, for, in behalf of</i> .
<b>Cum</b> , <i>with</i> .	<b>Sine</b> , <i>without</i> , opposed to <b>cum</b> .
<b>Dē</b> , <i>down from, from, of = about</i> .	<b>Tenus</b> ( <i>to the extent of</i> ), <i>as far as</i> (occasionally with the Genitive).

3. These four prepositions take the Accusative and Ablative:

**in**, **sub**, **super**, **subter**.

	ACCUSATIVE.	ABLATIVE.
<b>In</b> , <i>in</i> ,	<i>into, for, (purpose),</i>	<i>in.</i>
<b>Sub</b> , <i>under</i> ,	<i>about (of time),</i>	<i>about (of time) [rarely].</i>
<b>Super</b> , <i>over</i> ,	<i>over, above,</i> <i>over and above,</i>	<i>about = dē.</i> <i>over [in prose rarely].</i>
<b>Subter</b> , <i>under</i> ,	<i>under, beneath,</i>	<i>under, beneath [rarely].</i>

 **In** and **sub** are often used with the Ablative after Verbs of Setting and Sitting.

4. All the other prepositions proper take the Accusative.

Notice for the present:

<b>Ad</b> , <i>at, to</i> (opposed to <b>Ab</b> ).	<b>Ob</b> , <i>with a view to</i> .
<b>Ante</b> , <i>before, facing</i> .	<b>Per</b> , <i>through, by way of, owing to, by</i> .
<b>Apud</b> (chiefly of persons), <i>at, near, in the presence of, writings of, at the house of, in the view of</i> .	<b>Post</b> , <i>behind, after</i> .
<b>Contrā</b> , <i>opposite to, against</i> .	<b>Praeter</b> , <i>past, except</i> .
<b>Inter</b> , <i>between, among</i> .	<b>Prope</b> , <i>near</i> .
	<b>Propter</b> , <i>on account of</i> .
	<b>Trāns</b> , <i>across</i> .



**108. Rule of Syntax:** *Time How Long* is expressed by *per* with the Accusative, or by the simple Accusative.

**Multōs annōs** (*per multōs annōs*), *many years.*

### EXERCISES.

#### I. Translate into English :

1. Leō dēfectus annīs recubābat in spēluncā suā et aegrum simulābat. In spēluncam intrāvērunt complūrēs bestiae ut rēgem vīsītārent. Imprudentēs dēvorāvit. Accēdit etiam vulpēs sed cauta ante spēluncam stābat. Cūr nōn in spēluncam intrās ? interrogāvit leō māgnā cum cōmitāte. Ad interrogātum vulpēs : Est locus, inquit, apud Horātium : Vestīgia nulla retrorsum.

2. Luscinia et acanthis ante fenestram in caveīs pendēbant. Prope fenestram stābat puerulus. Subitō luscinia cantum jūcundissimum incipit. Puerulus : Sine dubiō, inquit, acanthis tam suāviter canit ; nam pennās habet pulcherrimās. Sic stultī hominēs (Acc.) ex vestibus et formā aestimant.

3. Agricolae dēam ab aquā prohibēbant. Dea irāta improbōs agricolās in rānās mūtāvit. Sed nātūram nōn mūtāvit. Nam etiam sub aquā maledicere tentābant.

4. Cum os in gutture haerēret, lupus vehementer cruciābatur. Ad gruem cum māgnā contentiōne currit. Extrahe, quaesō, inquit, os ē gutture et māgnū tibi praemium dabō. Cum grūs praemium postulāret, lupus multō cum rīsū vituperābat infēlicissimam. Sic improbi benevolōs ante beneficium colunt, post beneficium rident.

5. Thrasō per multōs annōs āfuerat (Plupf. of *absūm*). Post reditum in patriam multum jactābat facinora sua. Inter alia ostendit spatiū longitūdinem. Nēmō, inquit, in insulā Rhodō praeter mē tantum spatium superāvit. Factī omnēs Rhodiōs testēs habēō. Ūnus dē circulō : Heus tū. Sī vēra narrās, nōn dēsīderāmus Rhodiōs testēs. Hīc Rhodus, hīc saltā.



## II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. The mother was lying in bed. The son lived with [= at the house of] his (*suus*) mother. The wolf comes to the door and knocks. The son answers through the crack of the door. I have waited a long time, said the wolf. Wait until (*usque ad*) doomsday (*diēs suprēmus*), answers the son. 2. The master flogs [his] slave on account of laziness. The slave filches food on account of hunger. 3. In India sages spend-their-lives (*aetātem agō*, 3.) naked and endure (*perferō*, 3.) snows (*nix, nivis*) without pain. If they are burned (*adūrō*, 3.), they bear [it] without a groan (*gemitus, ūs*).

B. 1. Darius escapes from Scythia with a small part of [his] army. 2. While the dog is trying to kill the snake he turns the cradle over on (*super*) the baby. 3. The birds are flying through the air. 4. We are in despair about the arrival of our mother. 5. I have not killed a frog for (*per*) many years. 6. If you run [= shall run] across the sea, you will not change yourself (*animus*). 7. The sisters lived one year at their brother's house.

☞ Reading Lesson VIII., p. 169.

### XXXII. THIRD DECLENSION.—THIRD CONJUGATION—(REVIEWED).

☞ For the Active, see 53-56.

#### GENDER OF I STEMS.

**109. Rule of Gender:** Of stems in *i*, Nominative in *-is*, some are masculine, some feminine. Masculine are:

**Amnis, axis, callis, crīnis,**  
river axle footpath hair

**Cassī, caulīs, fascīs, fīnis,**  
pl. toils stalk fagot end

**Fūnis, fustīs, ignīs, ēnsīs,**  
rope cudgel fire glaive

**Orbis, pānis, piscīs, mēnsīs,**  
circle bread fish month

**Postis, scrobīs, būris, collīs,**  
doorpost ditch ploughtail hill

**Sentīs, torquis atque follīs,**  
bramble necklace bellows

**Torris, unguīs, et annālis,**  
firebrand nail pl. annals

**Vectīs vermīs et canālis.**  
lever worm and canal

**110. Rule of Syntax:** *To have* may be expressed by *habere* with the Accusative of the Thing, or *esse*, with the Dative of the Person.

*amicum habeo, I have a friend.*

*est mihi amicus, there is to me a friend.*

### EXERCISES.

#### I. Translate into English :


A. 1. *Homō importūnus ā virō nōbilī postulāvit ut dēcēderet, dicēns : Fatuō nunquam dēcēdam. At ego semper, respondet alter.* 2. *Puerī operam dant ut miserum senem nive (Nom. *nix*) contegant.* 3. *Edere dēbēmus ut vīvāmus, nōn vīvere ut edāmus.* 4. *Saepe (paucissimus) piscēs in (māgnus) amne reperiēs.* 5. *Virgō pulcherrima (aureus) crīnēs in nōdum colligēbat.* 6. *Vultur crūdēlissimus passerem miserrimum unguī (acūtus) corripit.* 7. *Apud vicīnum pānis est pulcherrimus.* 8. *Imperātor castra in (humilis, Superl.) colle pōnēbat.*

B. 1. *Sī pater sineret, juvenis tōtum diem lūderet latrunculis.* 2. *Sī leō accēderet, omnēs hominēs fugerent.* 3. *Stupidus homō, cum undīs suffōcārētur, clāmābat : Sī servātus erō, aquam nōn attingam priusquam frāter mē natāre docuerit.* 4. *Frūstrā Diogenī suādent amīcī ut fugitīvum servum requirant.* *Sapiēns inūtilem comitem nunquam requirēt.* 5. *Erus servum molestum (dūrissimus) fuste mulcābat.* 6. *Senex Mortī dicit : Tolle mihi in umerōs fascem (gravissimus).* 7. *Nautae (longus) fūnem in (rapidus) amnem dē altō pontē dēmittunt.*

#### II. Translate into Latin :

1. The master flogs [his] slave to make him do [= that he may do] his (*suus*) work. 2. The boy kept (*alō*, 3.) a dog to bark at the passers-by (*viātor*). 3. As Diogenes was urging [his] friends to leave his (*suus*) body unburied, [his] friends asked (*petō*), that the body of [their] dear friend (*homō amīcissimus*) might not be mangled by wild beasts. Then quoth


he : Put a stick (*bacillum*) close by (*propter*) me that I may drive off the wild beasts. 6. If the belly (*venter, tris*) had language it would abuse [its] master on account of [his] cruelty (*crūdēlitās*). 7. As the wolf was fleeing from the hunter, he begged the cowherd (*bubulcus, ī,*) not to betray an unfortunate [creature].

 Reading Lesson IX., p. 170.

### XXXIII. THIRD CONJUGATION.—FORMATION OF PERFECT.


*111.* 1. *There are two Perfects in the Active of the Third Conjugation, one in -ī and one in -sī.*

2. The form of the Perfect depends on the length of the Verb-stem.

 When the Verb-stem is not the same as the Present stem, it will be indicated by small capitals thus: *tang-ō, TAG*; *tang-* being the Present stem, *TAG* the Verb-stem.


3. When the Verb-stem is *short*, the Perfect ends in *ī*, as :

<i>em-ō,</i>	<i>I buy.</i>	<i>ēm-ī,</i>	<i>I have bought.</i>
<i>capi-ō (CAP),</i>	<i>I take.</i>	<i>cēp-ī,</i>	<i>I have taken.</i>

 The vowel changes are best learned at first by observation.

4. When the Verb-stem is *long*, the Perfect ends in *sī*, as :

<i>rēp-ō,</i>	<i>I creep.</i>	<i>rep-sī,</i>	<i>I have crept.</i>
---------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------------

 But stems in *-nd* have the Perfect in *-ī*.

*ascend-ō. I mount, ascend-ī.*

5. Some verbs have a *reduplicated* Perfect. By *Reduplication* is meant the repetition of the first consonant of the stem with a vowel, as :

<i>cad-ō,</i>	<i>I fall.</i>	<i>cecid-ī,</i>	<i>I have fallen.</i>
---------------	----------------	-----------------	-----------------------

All these have the Perfect in *-ī*.

6. Stems of the Third Conjugation, like those of the

Third Declension (36), are divided according to their last letter into :

- A. Mute stems : p and b being *P-mutes*.  
                   c and g         *K-mutes*.  
                   t and d         *T-mutes*.
- B. Liquid stems : l, m, n, r being *liquids*.
- C. Sibilant stems : s being a *sibilant*.
- D. U-stems.

7. *Laws of Euphony (Easy sound) :*

Notice that 1. b before s becomes p, scrib-ō, *I write*, scrip-sī.  
                   2. c         dic-ō, *I say*, dixī.  
                   g } with s becomes x, jung-ō, *I join*. junxī.  
                   qu }         coqu-ō, *I work*. coxī.  
                   3. t         mitt-ō, *I send*, mī-sī.  
                   and } before s are dropped,  
                   d }         claud-ō, *I shut*, clau-sī,  
                           or becomes with s, ss, cēd-ō, *I give away*, ces-sī.

LIST OF VERBS.

112. I. Stems in a *P-mute*.

1. *With a short stem-syllable.*

capīō, cap-ere, cēp-ī, cap-tum, *to take, catch*.  
 accipiō, accip-ere, accēp-ī, accep-tum, *to receive*.  
 rumpō (RUP), rump-ere, rūp-ī, rup-tum, *to break, burst*.

2. *With a long stem-syllable.*

rēpō, rēp-ere, rep-sī, rep-tum, *creep*.  
 carpō, carp-ere, carp-sī, carp-tum, *to pluck*.  
 discerpō, discerp-ere, discerp-sī, discerp-tum, *pluck to pieces*.  
 scribō, scrib-ere, scrip-sī, scrip-tum, *to write*.

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English :

1. Passer callidus cēperat culicem. Culex clāmābat :  
 concēde mihi vītam, orō tē. Frūstrā precibus guttur rūperīs,  
 respondet passer. Dum passer culicem dēvorat, fēlēs arrep-



sit et passerem unguibus discerpserit. 2. Puer mendāx, cum lupum rē vērā appropinquantem vidēret, clāmābat, lacrimābat, ējulābat. Sed rūsticī : Sī nōs tertium, inquit, dē cēperīs, nōstra erit culpa (*fault*).

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The snake is creeping up (*arrēpō*) to catch the bird. The snake crept up to catch the bird. 2. We are breaking (*rumpō*) the bridge that the enemy may not destroy the city. We broke the bridge that the enemy might not destroy the city. 3. We have written (*īnscrībō*) our names on (*in*, w. Abl.) our books.

### 113.

## II. Stems in a *K*-mute.

### 1. With a short stem-syllable.

legō,	leg-ere,	lēg-ī,	lēc-tum,	to read.
colligō,	collig-ere,	collēg-ī,	collec-tum,	to gather. [ <i>lead</i> .]
agō,	ag-ere,	ēg-ī,	āc-tum,	to do, act, drive,
redigō,	redig-ere,	redēg-ī,	redāc-tum	to bring back, re-
cōgō (cō + agō),	cōg-ere,	coēg-ī,	coāc-tum,	to compel. [ <i>duce</i> .]
fugiō,	fug-ere,	fūg-ī,	fug-i-tum,	to flee.
faciō,	fac-ere,	fēc-ī,	fac-tum,	to make.
perficiō,	perfic-ere,	perfēc-ī,	perfec-tum,	to achieve, finish.
interficiō,	interfic-ere,	interfēc-ī,	interfec-tum,	to make away with, kill.
patefaciō,	patefac-ere,	patefēc-ī,	patefac-tum,	to disclose, reveal.
jaciō,	jac-ere,	jēc-ī,	jac-tum,	to throw.
injiciō, (Iniciō)	injie-ere,	injēc-ī,	injec-tum,	to throw in.
vincō (VIC),	vinc-ere,	vīc-ī,	vic-tum,	to conquer.
frangō (FRAG),	frang-ere,	frēg-ī,	frac-tum,	to break.
relinquō (LIQV),	relinqu-ere,	reliqu-ī,	relic-tum,	to leave.

### 2. With a long stem-syllable.

dīcō,	dīc-ere,	dixī,	dic-tum,	to say.
dūcō,	dūc-ere,	duxī,	duc-tum,	to lead. [ <i>clash</i> .]
cōnfligō,	cōnflig-ere,	cōnflixī,	cōnflie-tum,	to strike together,
figō,	fig-ere,	fixī,	fixum,	to fix, fasten.
jungō,	jung-ere,	junxī,	junc-tum,	to join.
cingō,	cing-ere,	cinxī,	cinc-tum,	to gird, surround.



tingō (tinguō),	ting-ere,	tinxī,	tinc-tum,	<i>to dip, dye.</i>
exstinguō,	exstingu-ere,	exstinxī,	exstinc-tum,	<i>to extinguish.</i>
pingō,	ping-ere,	pinxī,	pic-tum,	<i>to paint.</i>
stringō,	string-ere,	strinxī,	stric-tum,	<i>draw tight.</i>
mergō,	merg-ere,	mer-sī (mer[g]sī),	mer-sum,	<i>to plunge.</i>
flectō,	flect-ere,	flexī (flec[t]sī),	flexum,	<i>to bend.</i>
nectō,	nect-ere,	nexī (nec[t]sī),	nexum,	<i>to knot, tie.</i>
		(nexūi),		

3. *Aspirate stems.*

trahō,	trah-ere,	traxī,	trac-tum,	<i>to drag.</i>
vīvō (vīv),	vīv-ere,	vixī,	vic-tum,	<i>to live.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

regō,	regere,	rexī,	rec-tum,	<i>to keep right.</i>
dīrigō,	dīrig-ere,	dīrexī,	dīrec-tum,	<i>to direct.</i>
surgō,	surg-ere,	surrexī,	surrec-tum,	<i>to rise.</i>
tegō,	teg-ere,	texī,	tec-tum,	<i>to cover.</i>
coquō,	coqu-ere,	coxī,	coc-tum,	<i>to cook.</i>
cōnspiciō,	cōnspic-ere,	cōnspexī,	cōnspēc-tum,	<i>to behold.</i>
diligō,	dilig-ere,	dilēxī,	dilēc-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
intelligō,	intellig-ere,	intellexī,	intellec-tum,	<i>to understand.</i>
neglegō,	negleg-ere,	neglexī,	neglēc-tum,	<i>to neglect.</i>

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Vacca, ovis, capella societātem fēcerant cum leōne. Paulō post cēpērunt cervum permāgnum. Leō statim quattuor partēs fēcīt. Omnēs postulāvit. 2. Rūsticus filiīs singulās virgulās prae-buit ut frangerent. Facile frēgerunt. Mox virgulās in fasciculum cōnstrinxīt. Cum fasciculum cōnstrinxisset, ā filiīs postulāvit ut frangerent. Nihil prōfēcērunt. 3. In conventū bestiārum sīmius cūctīs prope suffrāgiīs creātus est rēx. Vulpēs, cum vānum novī rēgis ingenium perspiceret, dixīt sīmiō : Pater meus thēsaurum in sōlitūdine cēlāvit. Jūre rēgnī ad tē pertinet. Sīmius vulpem monuit ut statim ad thēsaurum dūceret. Vulpēs sīmiū nōn ad thēsaurum sed ad laqueōs sub fruticibus absconditōs duxīt.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. You (Pl.) gathered sticks [logs] to make a fagot. 2. If you shall have been silent (*sileō*), you will have done (*agō*) well. 3. Diogenes, the philosopher, threw away (*abjiciō*) [his] drinking-cup. 4. The sailors drew-up (*subdūcō*) [their] ships on dry-land (*in aridum*) that they might be safe. 5. If you have conquered (*vincō*) [your] temper (*animus*), you have conquered a fierce (Superl. of *acer*) enemy. 6. Even (*etiam*) if you plunge [= shall have plunged yourselves] into the water, you (*ō*) saucy (Superl.) frogs, my arrows will destroy (*interimō*) you. 7. The master detected (*dētegō*) the fraud (*fraus, fraudis, f.*) of the ass.

## 114.

III. Stems in a *T*-mute.

## 1. With a short stem-syllable and nd stems.

edō,	ed-ere,	ēd-ī,	ē-sum,	to eat.
fodiō,	fod-ere,	fōd-ī,	fos-sum,	to dig.
dēfendō,	dēfend-ere,	dēfend-ī,	dēfēn-sum,	to defend.
ascendō,	ascend-ere,	ascend-ī,	ascēn-sum,	to mount.
reprehendō,	reprehend-ere,	reprehend-ī,	reprehēn-sum,	to chide.
comprehendō,	comprehend-ere,	comprehend-ī,	comprehēn-sum,	to catch hold of, arrest.

## 2. With a long stem-syllable.

lūdō,	lūd-ere,	lū-sī,	lū-sum,	to play.
rōdō,	rōd-ere,	rō-sī,	rō-sum,	to gnaw.
claudō,	claud-ere,	clau-sī,	clau-sum,	to shut.
exclūdō,	exclūd-ere,	exclū-sī,	exclū-sum,	to shut out.
invādō,	invād-ere,	invā-sī,	invā-sum,	to invade.
mittō,	mitt-ere,	mī-sī,	mis-sum,	to send.
dīmittō,	dīmitt-ere,	dīmī-sī,	dīmis-sum,	to dismiss.
permittō,	permitt-ere,	permī-sī,	permis-sum,	to allow.
cēdō,	cēd-ere,	ces-sī,	ces-sum,	to give way.

## EXCEPTIONS.

dīvidō,	dīvid-ere,	dīvī-sī,	dīvī-sum,	to divide.
percutiō,	percut-ere,	percus-sī,	percus-sum,	to smite, pierce.
cōnsidō,	cōnsid-ere,	cōnsēd-ī,	cōnses-sum,	to settle down.
vertō,	vert-ere,	vert-ī,	ver-sum,	to turn.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Asinus pelle leōnis indūtus terrēbat bestiās et hominēs. Sed forte dominus auriculam ēminentem cōnspexit. Auriculam comprehendit et asinum domum duxit.

2. Cum leō incautum mūrem dīmīsisset, grātiās ēgit parvula bestia. Postea cum leō in laqueōs incidisset, (115) mūs nōdōs rōsit. Sic mūris parvulī operā magnus leō evāsīt.

3. Pater filiō ostendit lusciniā et acanthidem. Utra tam suāviter canit? interrogāvit. Cum respondisset (120) filiū: Acanthis; pennās enim habet pulcherrimās, reprehendit pater puerum ob stultissimū iūdicium.

## II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Diogenes, the philosopher, in broad-day (*clārissima lūx*) lighted (*accendō*) a lantern (*lucerna*). When his friends asked him: What (*quid*) have you done (*agō*)? he answered (Pres.): I lighted the lantern to look for (*quaerō*) a man (*homō*).

2. The only servant of Diogenes having run away [= when the only servant of Diogenes had run away], [his] friends urged (Imperf. of *suādeō*) that he should look up (*requirō*) the run-away. If you will guess (Fut. Pf. of *conji-ciō*) the answer of Diogenes, I will give you twopence (*nummus, ī*).

B. 1. Darius invaded (*invādō in*) the land of the Scythians with a great army. 2. Why did you strike (*percutiō*) me, asked the lazy slave; I have done nothing. I struck you, answers the master, because (*quod*) you have done nothing. 3. The gentleman (*vir nōbilis*) gave-way to the fool (*fatuus*). 4. When the lion had divided the game (*praeda*) into four parts, he excluded the cow, the sheep [and] the kid. 5. Hope and fortune, farewell! You have fooled me enough (*sat*): fool others now.

XXXIV. THIRD CONJUGATION.—FORMATION OF PERFECT—(CONCLUDED).

*115. Liquid Stems ; U Stems ; Reduplicated forms* and other peculiarities.

IV. Stems in Liquids.

emō,	em-ere,	ēm-ī,	em(p)-tum,	<i>to buy.</i>
interimō,	interim-ere,	interēm-ī,	interem(p)-tum,	<i>to kill.</i>
sūmō,	sūm-ere,	sūm(p)-sī,	sūm(p)-tum,	<i>to take.</i>
vellō (conv.),	vell-ere,	vell-ī, vul-sī,	vul-sum,	<i>to pluck.</i>

V. Stems in U.

tribuō,	tribu-ere,	tribu-ī,	tribū-tum,	<i>to allot.</i>
induō,	indu-ere,	indu-ī,	indū-tum,	<i>to put on.</i>
statuō,	statu-ere,	statu-ī,	statū-tum,	<i>to settle.</i>
cōnstituō,	cōnstitu-ere,	cōnstitu-ī,	cōnstitū-tum,	<i>to determine.</i>
dīruō,	dīru-ere,	dīru-ī,	dīrū-tum,	<i>to destroy.</i>
metuō,	metu-ere,	metu-ī,	———	<i>to fear.</i>
solvō,	solv-ere,	solv-ī,	solū-tum,	<i>to loosen.</i>

VI. Reduplicated Forms.

☞ In composition the syllable of reduplication is usually dropped, as **cado, cecidī**, but **occid-ō, occid-ī**.

cadō,	cad-ere,	cecīd-ī,	cā-sum,	<i>to fall.</i>
occidō,	occid-ere,	occīd-ī,	occā-sum,	<i>to fall.</i>
caedō,	caed-ere,	cecīd-ī,	cae-sum,	<i>to fell, cut.</i>
occidō,	occīd-ere,	occīd-ī,	occī-sum,	<i>to kill.</i>
canō,	can-ere,	cecin-ī,	can-tum,	<i>to sing.</i>
pellō,	pell-ere,	pepul-ī,	pul-sum,	<i>to drive.</i>
currō,	curr-ere,	cueurr-ī,	cur-sum,	<i>to run.</i>
discō,	disc-ere,	didic-ī,	———	<i>to learn.</i>
tangō (TAG),	tang-ere,	tetig-ī,	tac-tum,	<i>to touch.</i>
attingō,	atting-ere,	attig-ī,	attac-tum,	<i>to attain.</i>
fallō,	fall-ere,	fefell-ī,	fal-sum,	<i>to cheat.</i>
pendō,	pend-ere,	pepend-ī,	pēn-sum,	<i>to (hang), weigh.</i>
suspendō,	suspend-ere,	suspend-ī,	suspēn-sum,	<i>to hang (up).</i>
parī,	par-ere,	peper-ī,	par-tum,	<i>to bring forth.</i>
parcō,	parc-ere,	peperc-ī,	par-sum,	<i>to spare.</i>
bibō,	bib-ere,	bib-ī,	(bib-i-tum),	<i>to drink.</i>



dō,	dāre,	ded-ī,	dā-tum,	<i>to give.</i>
reddō,	redd-ere,	reddid-ī,	reddī-tum,	<i>to give back.</i>
trādō,	trād-ere,	trādid-ī,	trādi-tum,	<i>to deliver.</i>
vēndō,	vēnd-ere.	vēndid-ī,	vēndi-tum,	<i>to sell.</i>
prōdō,	prōd-ere,	prōdid-ī,	prōdi-tum,	<i>to betray.</i>
condō,	cond-ere,	condid-ī,	condi-tum,	<i>to found, hide.</i>
perdō,	perd-ere,	perdid-ī,	perdi-tum,	<i>to ruin.</i>
crēdō,	crēd-ere,	crēdid-ī,	crēdi-tum,	<i>to believe.</i>
stō,	stā-re,	stet-ī,	stā-tum,	<i>to stand.</i>
dēsistō,	dēsist-ere,	dēstit-ī,	dēsti-tum,	<i>to desist, leave off.</i>

VII. Various Peculiarities.

pōnō,	pōn-ere,	pos-uī,	posi-tum,	<i>to place, lay aside.</i>
serō,	ser-ere,	sē-vī,	sā-tum,	<i>to sow.</i>
dēcernō,	dēcern-ere,	dēcrē-vī,	dēcrē-tum,	<i>to determine.</i>
spērō,	spēr-ere,	sprē-vī,	sprē-tum,	<i>to despise.</i>
crēscō,	crēsc-ere,	(crē-vī),	(crē-tum),	<i>to grow.</i>
quiēscō,	quiēsc-ere,	quiē-vī,	quiē-tum,	<i>to rest.</i>
cōgnōscō,	cōgnōsc-ere,	cōgnō-vī,	cōgni-tum,	<i>to find out.</i>
gerō,	ger-ere,	ges-sī,	ges-tum,	<i>to carry on.</i>
ūrō,	ūr-ere,	ūs-sī,	ūs-tum,	<i>to burn.</i>
premō,	prem-ere,	pres-sī,	pres-sum,	<i>to press.</i>
opprimō,	opprim-ere,	oppres-sī,	oppres-sum,	<i>to surprise.</i>
ferō,	ferre,	tul-ī,	lā-tum,	<i>to bear.</i>
tollō,	toll-ere,	sustul-ī,	sublā-tum,	<i>to lift, raise.</i>

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Leō prīmam partem sūmpsit quia leō erat; alteram partem cēterae bestiae tribuerunt leōnī quia rēx erat; tertia pars leōnī ob tigit, quia validior erat; quartam partem nulla bestiārum tetigit.

2. Fugitīvus asinus pellem leōnis induerat. Omnēs bestiās et hominēs ferrere cōstituit. Erum vērō nōn fefellit. Erus enim, cum auriculam eminentem cōspexisset, fugitīvum statim cōgnōvit, auriculam convellit, asinum male mulcātum domum pepulit.

3. Erus lusciniā et acanthidem ēmerat. Ancilla avēs ante fenestram suspendit. Lusciniā cantum incēpit. Cum avis dēstitisset, erus rogāvit: Utra tam suāviter cecinī?



4. Rānae, cum rēgem nihil sē moventem vidērent, timōrem posuērunt, lignum sprēvērunt, novum rēgem postulare dēcrēvērunt.

B. 1. Diū cum cervō bellum gesserat equus. Tandem hominis auxiliō inimicū ē prātō expulit. At homō callidus equum servīre cōēgit. Frūstrā miserrimus servus ējūlavit: Utinam nē gessissem bellum cum cervō. Utinam nē mē trādidissem perfidō amicō.

2. Cum mūs incautē nāsū leōnis tetigisset, rēx irātus mūrem corripit. Tum mūs: sī mihī pepercērīs, inquit, grātus tibi erō. Leō respondet: Effuge. Paulō post leō praedam quaerēns incidērat in laqueōs. Cito accurrit mūsculus ut laqueōs rōderet et māgnanīmum liberāret leōnem.

3. Fēlēs vespertiliōnem oppressit. Vespertiliō metuit nē sē dēvorāret. Incipit ōrāre. Sed fēlēs: Nōn iterum mē fefellerīs.

## II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. A poor carpenter had bought an axe. The axe fell-down (*dēcidō*, 3.) into a deep river. The god of the river brought-back (*referō*) a golden axe. It-is not mine, answers the carpenter. 2. The old man had cut logs in a forest. He raised the fagot of logs (up) on (*in*) [his] shoulders. As the fagot was pressing him, he laid down (*dēpōnō*, 3.) the logs and invoked Death. As he saw Death approaching, he said: I cried out because the fagot had pressed my shoulders.

B. 1. The throne (*rēgnum*) has fallen-to (*obtingō*, 3., w. Dat.) thee. 2. My father as-he-was-dying (*moriēns*) delivered to me a treasure. 3. Jason sowed dragon's teeth. 4. Hercules put (*impōnō*, 3., with Dat.) a lion's jaws (*fauz*, Gen. *faucis*) on [his] head. 5. We got-up (*institūō*, 3.) a party (*convīvium*). 6. The Greeks destroyed Troy (*Trōja*). 7. The goose stood one hour (*hōra*) on (Abl.) one foot.

## XXXV. THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE.

116.

PASSIVE OF *Emō*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Am bought.**e, may be, bought.*

SING.—1. em-o-r,  
2. em-e-ris,  
3. em-i-tur,

em-a-r,  
em-ā-ris,  
em-ā-tur,

PLUR.—1. em-i-mur,  
2. em-i-mini,  
3. em-u-ntur.

em-ā-mur,  
em-ā-mini,  
em-a-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was bought.**Were, might be, bought*

SING.—1. em-ē-ba-r,  
2. em-ē-bā-ris,  
3. em-ē-bā-tur,

em-e-re-r,  
em-e-rē-ris,  
em-e-rē-tur,

PLUR.—1. em-ē-bā-mur,  
2. em-ē-bā-mini,  
3. em-ē-ba-ntur.

em-e-rē-mur,  
em-e-rē-mini,  
em-e-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

*Shall be bought.*

SING.—1. em-a-r,  
2. em-ē-ris,  
3. em-ē-tur,

PLUR.—1. em-ē-mur,  
2. em-ē-mini,  
3. em-e-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.

SECOND.

SING.—2. em-e-re, *be thou bought.* 1. em-i-tor, *thou shalt be bought.*  
2. em-i-tor, *he shall be bought.*

PLUR.—2. em-i-mini, *be ye bought.* 3. em-u-ntor, *they shall be bought.*

## 117.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE OF **Emō.**

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have been, was bought.**Have, may have, been bought.*

SING.—1.	em(p)-t-us, -a, -um, sum,	em(p)-t-us, -a, -um, sim,
2.	es,	sis,
3.	est,	sit,
PLUR.—1.	em(p)-t-ī, ae, -a, sumus,	em(p)-t-ī, -ae, -a, simus,
2.	estis,	sitis,
3.	sunt.	sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had been bought.**Had, might have, been bought.*

SING.—1.	em(p)-t-us, -a, -um, eram,	em(p)-t-us, -a, -um, essem,
2.	erās,	essēs,
3.	erat,	esset,
PLUR.—1.	em(p)-t-ī, -ae, -a, erāmus,	em(p)-t-ī, -ae, -a, essēmus,
2.	erātis,	essētis,
3.	erant,	essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been bought.*

SING.—1.	em(p)-t-us, -a, -um, erō,
2.	eris,
3.	erit,
PLUR.—1.	em(p)-t-ī, -ae, -a, erimus,
2.	eritis,
3.	erunt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	em-ī,	<i>to be bought.</i>
PERF.	em(p)-t-um, -am, -um, esse,	<i>to have been bought.</i>
FUT.	em(p)-t-um irī,	<i>to be about to be bought.</i>
F. P.	em(p)-t-um, -am, -um, fore.	

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	em(p)-t-us, -a, -um,	<i>bought.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	em-e-nd-us, -a, -um,	<i>to be bought.</i>

118.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE OF *Capiō*.

## INDICATIVE.

*Am taken.*

## PRESENT.

- SING.—1. capi-o-r,  
2. cap-e-ris,  
3. cap-i-tur,  
PLUR.—1. cap-i-mur,  
2. cap-i-mini,  
3. capi-u-ntur.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Be, may be, taken.*

- capi-a-r,  
capi-ā-ris,  
capi-ā-tur,  
capi-ā-mur,  
capi-ā-mini,  
capi-a-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was taken.**Were, might be, taken.*

- SING.—1. capi-ē-ba-r,  
2. capi-ē-bā-ris,  
3. capi-ē-bā-tur,  
PLUR.—1. capi-ē-bā-mur,  
2. capi-ē-bā-mini,  
3. capi-ē-ba-ntur.

- cap-e-re-r,  
cap-e-rē-ris,  
cap-e-rē-tur,  
cap-e-rē-mur,  
cap-e-rē-mini,  
cap-e-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be taken.*

- SING.—1. capi-a-r,  
2. capi-ē-ris,  
3. capi-ē-tur,  
PLUR.—1. capi-ē-mur,  
2. capi-ē-mini,  
3. capi-e-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

## FIRST.

## SECOND.

- SING.—2. cap-e-re, *be thou taken.* 2. cap-i-tor, *thou shalt be taken.*  
3. cap-i-tor, *he shall be taken.*  
PLUR.—2. cap-i-mini, *be ye taken.* 3. capi-u-ntor, *they shall be taken.*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

- PRES. cap-i.  
PERF. cap-t-um esse.  
FUT. cap-t-um iri.  
F. P. cap-t-um fore.

- PERFECT. cap-t-us.  
GERUNDIVE. capi-e-nd-us.

**119. Rules of Syntax:** 1. In Latin Passives are used impersonally far more freely than in English. The English sign of the Impersonal is *It*.

*Curritur* (*It is run*), *there is a running, people are running.*

*Cōnsurgitur* (*It is uprisen*), *up they rise.*

2. Verbs that take the Dative alone cannot be turned into the Passive except impersonally, as above. The Dative remains unchanged. The same rule applies to the Genitive and Ablative.

*Probus nēminī invidet*, *A man of worth feels envy to (envies) nobody.*

*Ā probō nēminī invidētur* (*To no one envy is felt by a man of worth*), *nobody is envied by a man of worth.*

## EXERCISES.

### I. Translate into English:

1. *Ā passere capitur culex. Culex clāmābat: Concēde mihi vītam. Respondit passer: Vīta nōn concēdētur. Dum culex interficitur, passer ab accipitre corripitur. Parce mihi, orābat. Cūr tū nōn pepercisti culicī? respondit accipiter. Nec tibi parcētur.* 2. *Dea agricolās in rānās mūtāvit. Tamen convīciis nōn dēsistitur.* 3. *Mūrēs aliquando cōsultābant: Quōmodo, inquit, ā dolīs inimicissimae fēlis dēfendēmur? Multa prōpōnēbantur ā singulis sed nihil placēbat. Postrēmō ūnus prōposuit ut tintinnābulum fēli annecterētur. Cōnsurgitur. Ad orātōrem concurritur. Jam tū, inquit, annecte tintinnābulum. Ab aliō, respondit, cōnsilium darī solet, ab aliō opera sūmī.* 4. *Inter Zeuxin et Parrhasium, pictōrēs clārissimōs, certāmen artis institūtum erat. Zeuxis ūvās pinxit. Avēs dēceptae advolāvērunt. Ā Parrhasiō linteum pictum prōpositum est. Zeuxis dēceptus linteum tollī jubet ut pictūra ostenderētur. Cum errōrem intellexisset: Victus sum, inquit. Ā mē avēs dēceptae sunt, ā tē artifex.*



## II. Translate into Latin:

1. The old man worn-out by the miseries of old age and poverty, invoked Death that all the evils of life might be taken away. 2. The bat seized by the cat begs that life be granted him (*sibi*). 3. Juno strove (*contendō*, 3.) that Hercules should be excluded from the throne. 4. When the virgin was brought up to the altar, the Greeks shouted: Let the virgin be spared. 5. We should forgive, if we were more readily forgiven. 6. Would that books had not been written!

☞ Reading Lesson XII. 171.

## XXXVI. CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

120. Many verbs change their conjugation when they reach the Perfect and Supine.

I. vetō,	vetā-re,	vet-uī (II.)	veti-tum,	<i>to forbid.</i>
II. videō,	vidē-re,	vīd-i (III.)	vī-sum,	<i>to see.</i>
respondeō,	respondē-re,	respond-i,	respōn-sum,	<i>to answer.</i>
sedeō,	sedē-re,	sēd-i,	ses-sum,	<i>to sit.</i>
pendeō,	pendē-re,	pend-i,	—	<i>to hang.</i>
rideō,	rīdē-re,	rī-sī,	rī-sum,	<i>to laugh.</i>
suādeō,	suādē-re,	suā-sī,	suā-sum,	<i>to advise,</i>
mōveō,	movē-re,	mōv-i,	mō-tum,	<i>to move.</i>
voveō,	vovē-re,	vōv-i,	vō-tum,	<i>to vow.</i>
caveō,	cavē-re,	cāv-i,	cau-tum,	<i>to beware. [vance.]</i>
augeō,	augē-re,	auxī,	auc-tum,	<i>to increase, ad-</i>
maneō,	manē-re,	mān-sī,	mān-sum,	<i>to remain.</i>
haereō,	haer-ēre,	hae-sī,	hae-sum,	<i>to stick (fast).</i>
jubeō,	jubē-re,	jus-sī,	jus-sum,	<i>to order, bid.</i>
III. alō,	al-ere,	al-uī (II.)	al-tum,	<i>to nourish, foster.</i>
colō,	col-ere,	col-uī,	cul-tum,	<i>to cultivate, honor.</i>
rapiō,	rap-ere,	rap-uī,	rap-tum,	<i>to carry off.</i>
corripīō,	corrip-ere,	corrip-uī,	correp-tum,	<i>to seize.</i>
fremō,	frem-ere,	frem-uī,	fremī-tum,	<i>to roar, growl.</i>
recumbō,	recumb-ere,	recub-uī,	recubī-tum,	<i>to recline.</i>
petō,	pet-ere,	petī-vī (IV.)	petī-tum,	<i>to seek.</i>
cupiō,	cup-ere,	cupī-vī,	cupī-tum,	<i>to desire.</i>
quaerō,	quaer-ere,	quaesī-vī,	quaesī-tum,	<i>to seek.</i>
requirō,	requir-ere,	requīsī-vī,	requīsī-tum,	“ “

IV. veniō,	veni-re,	vĕn-i (III)	ven-tum,	to come.
inveniō,	inveni-re,	invĕn-i,	inven-tum,	to find.
sentiō,	senti-re,	sĕn-sī,	sĕn-sum,	to feel, perceive.
vinciō,	vinci-re,	vinxī,	vine-tum,	to bind.
hauriō,	hauri-re,	hau-sī,	haus-tum,	to draw, drain.
reperiō,	reperi-re,	repper-i,	reper-tum,	to find.
aperiō,	aperi-re,	aper-uī (II.)	aper-tum (III.)	to open.
īnsiliō,	īnsili-re,	īnsil-uī,	insul-tum,	to leap on.
sepeliō,	sepeli-re,	sepeli-vi,	sepul-tum (III.)	to bury.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. In cornū taurī cum parva sēdisset musca, bēlua forte caput mōvit. Tum musca : Īgnōsce, inquit. Sī scīsssem (=scīvissem) tē dēbilem esse, cāvisssem nec īnsiluissem. Taurus rīsīt. Ubī es? respondit. Nihil sĕnsī. 2. Leō māgnus in silvam vēnerat ut dormīret. Dum dormit, mūsculus nāsū tetigit. Subitō leō mūrem corripuit. Mūs ā leōne petīvit ut sībī (Dat. of *suī*) īgnōsceret. Tandem leōnī persuāsīt ut dīmiteret. Paulō post leō fremuit. Cito accurrit mūs, leōnem laqueīs implicātum (*entangled*) repperit, nōdōs rōsit, leōnem liberāvit. 3. Rūsticus, cum discordiam inter filiōs esse vīdisset, jussit virgulās apportārī. Singulās frangere jussī, nullō negōtiō frēgērunt. Cum vinxissent, iterum frangere jussī, nihil prōfēcērunt.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. I have often heard you say [= saying] : If you advance (Fut. Perf.) the state, you will advance (Fut. Perf.) all the citizens. 2. Alexander sought the empire (*imperium*) of the whole-world. 3. The teacher persuaded the mother to send [her] son to school. 4. A bone had stuck-fast in the wolf's throat. He asked (*petō ā*) the crane again to (*ut*) free him (*sē*) from the pain and danger. The crane laughed at the lying wolf. 5. The ancient nations worshipped (*colō*) many gods. 6. The Greeks moved [their] fleet up to (*ad*) the walls of the city.

## XXXVII. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

☞ For the Active, see 81-83.

121.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Am heard.**Be, may be, heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-o-r,  
2. audi-ris,  
3. audi-tur,

- audi-a-r,  
audi-ā-ris,  
audi-ā-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-mur,  
2. audi-mini,  
3. audi-untur.

- audi-ā-mur,  
audi-ā-mini,  
audi-a-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was heard.**Were, might be, heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-ē-ba-r,  
2. audi-ē-bā-ris,  
3. audi-ē-bā-tur,

- audi-re-r,  
audi-rē-ris,  
audi-rē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-ē-bā-mur,  
2. audi-ē-bā-mini,  
3. audi-ē-ba-ntur.

- audi-rē-mur,  
audi-rē-mini,  
audi-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

*Shall be heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-a-r,  
2. audi-ē-ris,  
3. audi-ē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-ē-mur,  
2. audi-ē-mini,  
3. audi-e-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.

SECOND.

- SING.—2. audi-re, *be thou heard.* 2. audi-tor, *thou shalt be heard.*  
3. audi-tor, *he shall be heard.*

- PLUR.—2. audi-mini, *be ye heard.* 3. audi-untor, *they shall be heard.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

122.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

*Have been heard, was heard.**Have, may have, been heard.*

SING.—1.	audi-t-us, -a, -um,	sum,	audi-t-us, -a, -um,	sim,
2.		es,		sis,
3.		est,		sit,
PLUR.—1.	audi-t-ī, -ae, -a,	sumus,	audi-t-ī, -ae, -a,	sīmus,
2.		estis,		sītis,
3.		sunt.		sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had been heard.**Had, might have, been heard.*

SING.—1.	audi-t-us, -a, -um,	eram,	audi-t-us, -a, -um,	essem,
2.		erās,		essēs,
3.		erat,		esset,
PLUR.—1.	audi-t-ī, -ae, -a,	erāmus,	audi-t-ī, -ae, -a,	essēmus,
2.		erātis,		essētis,
3.		erant.		essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been heard.*

SING.—1.	audi-t-us, -a, -um,	erō,
2.		eris,
3.		erit,
PLUR.—1.	audi-t-ī, -ae, -a,	erimus,
2.		eritis,
3.		erunt.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. audi-rī, *to be heard.*PERFECT. audi-t-um, -am, -um, esse, *to have been heard.*FUTURE. audi-t-um irī, *to be about to be heard.*

F. P. audi-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. audi-t-us, -a, -um, *heard.*GERUNDIVE. audi-e-nd-us, -a, -um, [*one*] *to be heard.*

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. In mūrīum conciliō (Neut. *council*) ūnus dixit : Sī mihi oboediētis, jam nōn (*no longer*) fēli serviētis. Tīntinnābulum inimicissimae bestiae annectitōte. Tum statim audiēmus cum veniet facileque effugiēmus. Respondit maximus nātū mūrīum: Ubī inveniēmus mancipem? (-ceps, cipis, *contractor*.)  
 2. Rūsticus canem reliquit ut filiolum custōdīret. 3. Fugitīvus asinus invēnit in silvā pellem leōnis. Pelle indūtus diū per agrōs saeviit. At erus, simul atque rudentem audīvit, asinī vōcem cōgnōvit. 4. Cervus, rāmōsīs cornibus impedītus, ā canibus capitur. 5. Cum dolus repetītus esset, rūsticī recūsāvērunt mendācī puerō subvenīre. 6. Agāsō juvenem vetuit sub asinō cōnsīdere. 7. Dēmōsthenēs revocātus ā iūdicibus et jussus reliquam fābulam ēnarrāre : Quid ? inquit, dē asinī umbrā dēsīderātis audīre, causam capitālem (*of life and death*) nōn audiētis ? 8. Captīvī ōrant ut inopiāe subveniātur. 9. Captīvī ōrābant ut inopiāe subvenīrētur.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. In battle (*aciēs, ēi*) wounds will not be felt by brave men.  
 2. While (*dum*) fighting is going on (Pass. of *pūgnō*), wounds are not felt. 3. When the beasts heard the voice of the ass, they all fled. 4. In the holidays (*per fēriās*) there was much playing, much sleeping (Pass.). 5. The countryman said : My baby will be carefully guarded by the faithful dog. 6. So-crates, the wisest of the Greeks, vowed a cock to Aesculapius (Gen. *i*).

☞ Reading Lesson XIII., p 171.

## XXXVIII. PRONOUNS.

## REFLEXIVE AND DETERMINATIVE.

**123. The Reflexive Pronoun** of the third person is *suī, sē, sibī*, with the possessive *suus, a, um*. The Re-



flexive is used when reference is made to the subject of the sentence.

In English we often translate by a simple *him, her, them, his, their*.

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
SINGULAR.		
N. —		
G. sui,	<i>of him, her, it(self),</i>	suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her(s), its</i>
D. sibi,	<i>to, for, him(self), her(self),</i>	( <i>own</i> ).
Acc. sē (sēsē),	<i>him(self), her(self),</i>	
Abl. sē (sēsē),	<i>from, with, him(self).</i>	
PLURAL.		
N. —		
G. sui,	<i>of them(selves),</i>	suus, -a, -um, <i>their (own)</i>
D. sibi,	<i>to, for them(selves),</i>	<i>theirs.</i>
Acc. sē (sēsē),	<i>them(selves),</i>	
Abl. sē (sēsē),	<i>from, with, by them(selves).</i>	

<b>Cervus sui admiratiōne fallitur,</b>	<i>The stag is cheated by SELF-admira- tion.</i>
<b>Uterque viator sibi asinum vindicat,</b>	<i>Each of the two travellers claims the ass for HIMSELF.</i>
<b>Viator humi sē prōsternit,</b>	<i>The traveller throws HIMSELF flat on the ground.</i>
<b>Biās omnia sua sēcum portābat,</b>	<i>Bias used to carry all HIS property with HIM (about him).</i>
<b>Cervus errōrem suum intellexit,</b>	<i>The stag perceived HIS mistake.</i>
<b>Viator sē mortuum esse simulat,</b>	<i>The traveller feigns (HIMSELF) to be dead.</i>

So also when in any part of the sentence the speaker is meant.

**Vespertiliō orat fēlem ut sibi parcat.** *Bat begs cat to spare HIM* (i. e. the bat). The bat said : **Parce mihi,** *Spare ME.*

### 124. The Determinative Pronouns are :

1.) *is, ea, id,* 2.) *īdem,* 3.) *ipse.*

1.) *Is, ea, id,* etc., is used for the ordinary *he, she, it, they.*

It is also employed with more stress in connection with the Relative.

2.) *īdem* corresponds to the English *same.*

3.) *Ipse* is the emphatic *self* of contrast.

## DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *is, he, that, etc.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	is, ea, id,	eī, or iī,	eae,	ea,	
G.	ējus,		eōrum, eārum,	eōrum,	
D.	eī,		eīs, or iīs,		
Acc.	eum, eam,	id,	eōs, eās,	ea,	
Abl.	eō, eā,	eō.	eīs, or iīs.		

2. *idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	īdem, eadem, idem,	eīdem, or iīdem,	eaedem,	eadem,	
G.	ējusdem,		eōrundem,	eārundem, eōrundem,	
D.	cīdem,		eīsdem, or iīsdem,		
Acc.	eundem, eandem, idem,	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,	
Abl.	eōdem, eādem, eōdem.	eīsdem, or iīsdem.			

3. *ipse, he, self.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	ipse, ipsa, ipsum,	ipsī, ipsae,	ipsa,		
G.	ipsīus,		ipsōrum, ipsārum,	ipsōrum,	
D.	ipsī,		ipsīs,		
Acc.	ipsum, ipsam,	ipsum, ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsa,	
Abl.	ipsō, ipsā,	ipsō.	ipsīs.		

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Asinus aegrōtus sē considerat : filius eum diligenter cūrābat. 2. Senex Mortem invocāvit ut sē omnibus malīs liberāret. Cum Mortem ad sē appropinquantem vidēret, eam rogāvit ut fascem in suōs umerōs tolleret. 3. Diogenēs Cynicus ubīque sēcum ferre (Inf. of *ferō*) solēbat pōculum ligneum. Eō pōculō aquam sibi ē fonte hauriēbat. Sed cum aliquando vidēret puerum manibus aquam haurientem, id abjēcit. Manūs, inquit, idem mihī officium praestābunt. 4. Cum ūnicus Diogenis servus aufūgisset, suādēbant omnes dominō ut eum requireret. At Diogenēs : Nōn faciam. 5. Triennium Androclus et leō in eōdem specū vixērunt. 6. Phylax, cum Nerōnem fugāvisset, praedam quaerēbat. At aberat os. Canis prūdentior id surripuerat, dum pūgnābant.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The braggart is always proclaiming his own praises. 2. The gnat begs the sparrow to grant him life. The sparrow refuses to grant him life. 3. The stag perceives his error [but] too late. We ought to avoid his error. 4. The ass said to himself [= with himself] : I have cheated my master. The master said to him : I know (*nōvī*) you, my fine fellow (*mī asine*). 5. The horse conquered the stag by aid of the man. But now (*jam*) he himself is forced to be a slave to the man. 6. The city itself is small (*exiguus*), but it has very large and magnificent gates.

## XXXIX. PRONOUNS—(CONTINUED).

## DEMONSTRATIVE.

*125. The Demonstrative Pronouns are :*

1.) *hīc*, 2.) *iste*, 3.) *ille*.

1.) *Hīc* is used of that which is nearer the speaker (Demonstrative of the First Person) and often forms a contrast to *ille*.

2.) *Iste* refers to that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person (Demonstrative of the Second Person).

3.) *Ille* denotes that which is more remote from the speaker (Demonstrative of the Third Person). It is often equivalent to *the famous*.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *hīc*, *this (of mine)*.

SING.	N.	<i>hīc</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> ,	PL. N.	<i>hī</i> ,	<i>hae</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,
	G.	<i>hūjus</i> ,				<i>hōrum</i> ,	<i>hārum</i> ,	<i>hōrum</i> ,
	D.	<i>huīc</i> ,				<i>hīs</i> ,		
	Acc.	<i>hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> ,		<i>hōs</i> ,	<i>hās</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,
	Abl.	<i>hōc</i> ,	<i>hāc</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> .		<i>hīs</i> .		

## 2. iste, that (of yours).

SING.—N.	iste,	ista,	istud,	PL. N. isti,	istae,	ista,
G.	istius,			istōrum,	istārum,	istōrum,
D.	istī,			istīs,		
Acc.	istum,	istam,	istud,	istōs,	istās,	ista,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.	istīs.		

## 3. ille, that (yonder).

SING.—N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	PL. N. illi,	illae,	illa,
G.	illius,			illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D.	illī,			illīs,		
Acc.	illum,	illam,	illud,	illōs,	illās,	illa,
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō.	illīs.		

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Sēcum dixit asinus dē catulō : Ille inūtilis, ego maxima semper commoda dominō comparāvī. Illī omnia, mihi nihil dōnātur. At ille callidus est adūlātor ; ā mē dominus nunquam blanditiās accēpit. Etiam ego amābor, sī idem faciam. Forte hōc tempore dominus intrat in stabulum. Illud cum vīdisset asinus, accurrit, pedēs in ējus umerīs pōnit, faciem ējus lātā suā linguā lambere incipit. Exterritus dominus vocat famulōs suōs ut eum verberent. Mulcātus asinus stultitiam suam dēplōrāvit. 2. Deus fluvīi probō fabrō trēs dederat secūrēs. Rem cum vicīnus audīvisset, ad eundem fluvium cum secūrī festīnat. Suā sponte fēcit (*managed*) ut secūris in aquam dēcideret. Appāret deus. Ēheu, inquit ille, secūrim meam perdidī. Apportāvit deus trēs secūrēs, auream, argenteam, ferream. Ēlige ipse tuam, inquit. Tum ille : Hæc, inquit, mea est, et auream arripere tentat. Sed jam deus omnēs in fluvium rējicit. 3. Nihil istō modō perficiēs.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The frogs having (*cum*, see **96**, 2.) demanded another

king, Jupiter sent a stork. She in one day killed a great number of them. The frogs begged the god to be freed from this calamity (*calamitās, ātis*). 2. The traveller said to himself: This beast will not touch corpses. 3. Harpālus, in those times, was considered (*habēō, 2.*) a lucky (*fēlix*) robber. 4. That friend of yours has stolen (*surripiō, 3.*) my book. 5. I have conceived (*concipiō, 3.*) a great suspicion concerning (*dē w. Abl.*) that soldier. 6. I shall always remember [= be mindful of, *memor*] that friend.

☞ Reading Lesson XIV., p. 172.

## XL. PRONOUNS—(CONTINUED).

### RELATIVE.

**126. The Relative Pronoun** is *quī, quae, quod, who, which, (that).*

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*quī, who.*

SING.—N.	<i>quī, quae, quod,</i>	PL. N.	<i>quī, quae, quae,</i>
G.	<i>cūjus,</i>		<i>quōrum, quārum, quōrum,</i>
D.	<i>cui,</i>		<i>quibus,</i>
Acc.	<i>quem, quam, quod,</i>		<i>quōs, quās, quae,</i>
Abl.	<i>quō, quā, quō.</i>		<i>quibus.</i>

**127. Rule of Syntax:** The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

The word to which the Relative refers is called the Antecedent (*that which goes before*), because it always comes first in mind, if not in word.

The common pronoun of the antecedent (correlative) is *is, ea, id*. It is often to be supplied. *Quī = is quī, Who = He who.*

The Latin language uses the Relative much oftener than does the English.



**Mūs**, quī fremitum audiverat, accurrit, *The mouse, who had heard the roar, ran up.*

**Pēram**, quae nōstris vitīis replēta est, post tergum nōbīs dedit deus, *The wallet, which is filled with our faults, God has put behind our backs.*

**Cornua**, quae mē perdidērunt, laudāvi, *The horns, which have ruined me, I praised.*

**Cūr mē interficis**, quī tibi nunquam nocuī? *Why do you kill me, who have never done you any harm?*

(Eum) quem amō, amō, (*Him*) whom I like, I like.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English:

1. Tiberius Gracchus filiōs relīquit Tiberium et Gājum, tribūnōs illōs clārissimōs, quī summā diligentīā ā mātrem doctī sunt. 2. Pyrrhus rēx in itinere incidit in canem qui interfectī hominis corpus custōdiēbat. Quem canem dēducī jussit. 3. Pelopis prōgeniēs, quae per multōs annōs rēgnum obtinuerat, ab Herculis prōgeniē expulsa est. Eōdem ferē tempore Athēnae sub rēgibus esse dēsīerunt (Perf. of *dēsīnō*) quōrum ultimus fuit Codrus. 4. Hesperidēs hortum habuērunt, in quō māla aurea erant. 5. Rēx Erythīae īnsulae bovēs (from *bōs*) rubrās habēbat, quās biceps canis custōdiēbat. 6. Hercules dolō Jūnōnis ā rēgnō exclūsus est, quod ad eum jūre pertinēbat. 7. Gruem, cui praemium prōmiserat, fefellit lupus. 8. In sōlitūdinem concessī, in quā specum invēnī.

## II. Translate into Latin:

1. I will confide-in that friend alone (*sōlus*), whose fidelity I have thoroughly-watched (*perspiciō*, 3.). 2. [He] who denies justice [= just things], gives everything [= all things]. 3. The cuckoo envied the nightingale, whose song was praised by all men. 4. I will give you the book, which you have demanded. 5. I will give you the books that have pleased you. 6. The wound, which the soldier has received, is fatal (*mortiferus*, a, um). 7. The wounds, which the enemy (Pl.) had dealt (*infligō*, 3. w. Dat.) our soldiers, were fatal. 8. The (*ille*) snakes, which Hercules killed, were sent by Juno, who was angry with (*suscēnseō*, 2. w. Dat.) him.

## XLI. PRONOUNS—(CONTINUED).

## INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

**128. Interrogative Pronouns:** The Adjective Interrogative is like the Relative. The Substantive Interrogative differs, but the difference is not strictly observed except in the Neuter Nominative and Accusative.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>Substantive.</i>	quis ?	who ?	quid ?	what ?	
<i>Adjective.</i>	quī ?		quae ?	quod ?	which ?
<i>Subst. and Adj.</i>	uter ?		utra ?	utrum ?	who, which of two ?
SING.—N. quis ? quid ? who ? what ?					
	G. cūjus ?				whose ?
	D. cui ?				to, for whom ?
	Acc. quem ?	quid ?			whom ? what ?
	Abl. quō ?				from, with, by whom or what ?

**129. Indefinite Pronouns:** Of these, note especially :

- 1.) **Aliquis**, *some one or other*, used chiefly in Positive Sentences.
- 2.) **Quisquam** and **ullus**, *any (at all)*, used in Negative Sentences.
- 3.) **Quīdam**, *a certain one*, often used where we employ the indefinite *a* or *an*.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. *Substantive.* aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, } somebody, some one or  
quis, qua, quid, } other.
- Adjective.* aliquī, aliquae (or aliqua), aliquod, } some, any.  
quī, quae (or qua), quod, }
2. quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, (and quoddam), *a certain, certain one.*
3. quisquam, ———, quidquam, *any one (at all).* No plural.
4. quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque, *each one.*

ūnusquisque, ūnaquaeque, ūnumquidque, and ūnumquodque, *each one severally.*

REMARK.—**Quisquam** is used only as a substantive, except with designations of persons ; **scriptor quisquam**, *any writer (at all)*, **Gallus quisquam**, *any Gaul (at all)*. The corresponding adjective is **ullus**.

ullus, -a, -um, *any*; nullus, -a, -um, *no one, not one*. The corresponding substantives are *nēmō* and *nihil*, which forms *nihili* and *nihilō* (Abl.), but only in certain combinations.

*nōnnullus, -a, -um, some, many a.*

*alius, -a, -ud, another*; *alter, -era, -erum, the other, one (of two)*; *neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.*

## EXERCISES.

### I. Translate into English:

1. Quis tē, juvenis impudentissime, jussit meam domum intrāre? 2. Quid audīvistī? Id quod audīvī iisdem verbīs, quibus dictum est, tibi referam. 3. Rēx filiam immolāvit quā nihil pulchrius erat in rēgnō. 4. Accurrit quīdam nōtus (*known*) mihi nōmine tantum. 5. Sī quid in tē peccāvī, dā mihi veniam. 6. Carmina mea nōn recitō cuiquam nisi amīcīs. 7. Prō sē quisque apud rēgem causam agēbat. 8. Cōsulum alterī obtigit Gallia, alterī Hispānia. Optimē. Sed utrī Hispānia obtigit, utrī Gallia? Neutrius nōmen dixistī. 9. Nēmō ullius rei nisi pūgnae memor erat. 10. Nōnnulli coturnīcis cantum praedicant.

### II. Translate into Latin:

1. What did your father say to you? He said nothing. 2. To which of you (two) shall I give this book? To neither. 3. Who will give us good advice? 4. You did this with somebody's help. 5. I blame this deed (*facinus*); another it will, perhaps, please. 6. In the wood sundry (*quīdam*) mice were playing, one of (*ex*) which touched the nose of the sleeping lion. 7. I care-for (*cūrō* w. Acc.) nobody, and nobody cares for me [= neither (*neque*) do I care-for any one, nor (*neque*) any-one for me]. 8. I have never seen anything in this kingdom more beautiful than my daughter.

## XLII. QUESTIONS.

**130. I. Direct Questions** are generally introduced by the aid of Interrogative Pronouns (128), or by the Interrogative Particles *-ne*, *nōne*, and *num*.

1.) *-ne* (always attached to the emphatic word) generally serves to denote a simple question, without indicating the character of the answer.

*Vidēsne illum altum montem? Seest thou yon high mountain?*

2.) *Nōne* expects an affirmative answer.

*Nōne canis similis est lupō? Is not a dog like a wolf?*

3.) *Num* expects a negative answer.

*Num audīs? You don't hear, (do you)?*

**131. II. Indirect Questions** are such as depend on a Verb of Saying or Thinking.

DIRECT QUESTION : *Quis es? Who art thou?*

INDIRECT QUESTION : *Dīc quis sīs, Say who thou art.*

The form of the Pronoun is the same for Direct and Indirect Questions.

*Num* loses its negative force and becomes *whether*.

*Interrogat num canis similis sit lupō. He asks whether a dog is like a wolf.*

**132. Rule of Syntax:** 1. As a rule the Dependent Interrogative turns the Indicative into the Subjunctive Mood.

After a Principal Tense (96.1) the Present Indicative of the Direct Question becomes the Present Subjunctive of the Indirect ; the Perfect or any Past Tense of the Indicative becomes the Perfect Subjunctive.

After an Historical Tense the Present Indicative of the Direct Question becomes the Imperfect Subjunctive of the Indirect Question ; the Perfect or any Past Tense of Indicative becomes the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Perfect when translated by *have* is a Principal Tense and is called the Pure Perfect.

The Perfect when translated by *did* is an Historical Tense and is called Historical Perfect.

The Present Indicative is often used as a Past Tense (Historical Present) and then takes either *set*,



DIRECT QUESTIONS : **Quid facis?** *What are you doing?*  
**Quid fēcisti?** *What have you done (been doing)?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS :

PRES.	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am finding out</i>	} <b>quid faciās,</b> <i>what you are doing.</i>
PURE PERF.	cōgnōvī,	<i>I have found out (know)</i>	
FUT.	cōgnōscam,	<i>I shall find out</i>	} <b>quid fēcerīs,</b> <i>what you have done, did, were doing.</i>
F. PERF.	cōgnōverō,	<i>I shall have found out (know)</i>	
IMPERF.	cōgnōscēbam,	<i>I was finding out</i>	} <b>quid facerēs,</b> <i>what you were doing.</i>
HIST. PERF.	cōgnōvī,	<i>I found out (knew)</i>	
PLUPERF.	cōgnōveram,	<i>I had found out</i>	} <b>quid fēcissēs,</b> <i>what you had done, did, had been doing.</i>

The Fut. Act. of the Direct Question commonly becomes the Fut. Partic. with **sim** after Principal, **essem** after Hist. Tenses (132, 1).

DIRECT QUESTION : **Quid faciēs?** *What will you do?*

INDIRECT QUESTION : **Interrogat quid factūrus sis.** *He asks what you are about to do, will do.*

**Interrogābat quid factūrus essēs.** *He was asking what you would, were about to do, would do.*

**Rule of Syntax :** 2. In the Dependent Question, when the First Person of the original question is changed to the Third Person, the Reflexive is used.

**Cūr mē interficis?** **clāmat vultur.** *Why are you killing ME? cries the vulture.*

**Vultur rogat vĕnātōrem cūr sē interficiat.** *The vulture asks the hunter why he is killing HIM (the vulture).*

### EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English :

1. Num quisquam Deum ipsum vīdit? 2. Sī tintinnābulum fĕlī annexerīmus, nōne statim audiēmus cum veniet? 3. Ursusne tanget cadāvera? 4. Lupus ovis pelle indūtus sē immiscuit ovium gregī quotīdiēque aliquam ex iīs occīdēbat. Quod cum pāstor animadvertisset, lupum necāvit, necātum dē



altissimā arbore suspendit. Postea, ā bubulcō quōdam interrogātus cūr ovem suspendisset : Rogās mē, inquit, cūr ovem suspenderit ? Pellem dētegit, mōnstrat lupum. 5. Caesar Androclum interrogāvit cūr eī leō pepercisset. Androclus dēmōnstrat cūr sibi leō pepercisset. 6. Nōne memoriā tenētis quid paulō ante dixerim.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. I will ask the son, whether (his) father has come. 2. Will fear of death frighten a brave soldier ? [No.] 3. If I were accustomed to put-confidence-in (*cōnfidō* w. Dat.) wicked men, should I not be often deceived ? 4. Did the orator tell the boys a charming story ? 5. I do not know who has dealt (*infligō*, 3. w. Dat.) my friend that wound. He himself does not know who has wounded (*vulnerō*, 1.) him. 6. Anacharsis [when] asked what was the best and what was the worst in man, answered : The tongue. 7. The same-man [when] asked what ships were safest, answered : [Those] which are drawn up (Perf. Pass. of *subducō*) on dry land (*in aridum*). 8. The wolf asked the shepherd why he was about to hang him. The shepherd replied : You know why I am about to hang you. 9. I asked the robber why he was about to deprive the boy of his clothing.

☞ Reading Lesson XV., p. 172.

## XLIII. DEPONENT VERBS.

**133. Deponent Verbs** are reflexive verbs, which are not used in the Active Voice except in a few forms.

In the reflexive verb the subject acts on or for itself, *e. g.* : **amplector**, *I embrace* (fold myself, put my arms around). **periclitor**, *I run my risk* (stake myself). **rixāmur**, *we squabble* (snap at one another).

Some Verbs, such as **vehor**, *ride*, and **videor**, *seem*, although they have Actives, produce the effect of Deponent Verbs.

Deponent Verbs are so called because they are said to *lay down* (**dēponere**) the Active form and the Passive signification.

134. DEPONENT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

*I exhort.*  
SING.—1. hortō-r,  
2. hortā-ris, etc.

*I was exhorting.*  
SING.—1. hortā-bar,  
2. hortā-bā-ris, etc.

*I shall exhort.*  
SING.—1. hortā-bo-r,  
2. hortā-be-ris, etc.

*Have exhorted, exhorted.*  
SING.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, sum, etc.  
PLUR.—1. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, sumus, etc.

*Had exhorted.*  
SING.—1. hortātus, -a, -um, eram, etc.  
PLUR.—1. hortātī, -ae, -a, erāmus.

*Shall have exhorted.*  
SING.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, erō, etc.  
PLUR.—1. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, erimus, etc.

PRESENT.

*I be exhorting, I may exhort.*  
hortē-r,  
hortē-ris, etc.

IMPERFECT.

*I were exhorting, I might exhort.*  
hortā-re-r,  
hortā-rē-ris, etc.

FUTURE.

PERFECT.

*Have, may have, exhorted.*  
hortā-t-us, -a, -um, sim, etc.  
hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, simus, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had, might have, exhorted.*  
hortā-t-us, -a, -am, essem, etc.  
hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, essemus, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.

SING.—2. hortā-re, exhort thou.  
PLUR.—2. hortā-mini, exhort ye.

SECOND.

2. hortā-tor, thou shalt exhort.  
3. hortā-tor, he shall exhort.  
3. hortā-ntor, they shall exhort.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. hortā-ri, to exhort.  
PERF. hortā-t-um, -am, -um, esse,  
to have exhorted.

F. P. hortā-t-um, -am, -um, fore.  
SUPINE. 1. hortā-tum, to exhort, for exhorting.  
2. hortā-tū, to exhort, in the exhorting.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, having exhorted.

GERUND. [hortā-ri], to exhort, exhorting.

G. hortā-nd-i, of exhorting.

ACTIVE FORMS.

PART. PRES. hortā-n-s, exhorting.  
FUT. hortā-tūr-us, -a, -um, about to exhort.  
INF. FUT. hortā-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to exhort.

PASSIVE IN MEANING.

GERUNDIVE. hortā-nd-us, -a, -um, to be exhorted.

### 135. DEONENTS OF THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

## INDICATIVE.

	SECOND CONJ.	THIRD CONJ.	FOURTH CONJ.
PRES.	vere-o-r.	loqu-o-r.	menti-o-r.
IMPF.	verē-ba-r.	loquē-ba-r.	menti-ē-ba-r.
FUT.	verē-bo-r.	loqu-a-r.	menti-a-r.
PERF.	veri-t-us sum.	locū-t-us sum.	menti-t-us sum.
PLUP.	veri-t-us eram.	locū-t-us eram.	menti-t-us eram.
F. PERF.	veri-t-us erō.	locū-t-us erō.	menti-t-us erō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	vere-a-r.	loqu-a-r.	menti-a-r.
IMPF.	verē-re-r.	loqu-e-re-r.	menti-re-r.
PERF.	veri-t-us sim.	locū-t-us sim.	menti-t-us sim.
PLUPF.	veri-t-us essem.	locū-t-us essem.	menti-t-us essem.

## IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.	2. verē-re.	loqu-e-re.	menti-re.
SECOND.	2. verē-tor.	loqu-i-tor.	menti-tor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	verē-rī.	loqu-ī.	menti-rī.
PERF.	veri-t-um esse.	locū-t-um esse.	menti-t-um esse.
F. PERF.	veri-t-um fore.	locū-t-um fore.	menti-t-um fore.

## PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	veri-t-us, -a, -um.	locū-t-us, -a, -um.	menti-t-us, -a, -um.
-------	---------------------	---------------------	----------------------

## GERUND.

[verē-rī].	[loqu-ī].	[menti-rī].
G. vere-nd-ī.	G. loque-nd-ī.	G. menti-e-nd-ī.

## SUPINE.

FIRST.	veri-tum.	locū-tum.	menti-tum.
SECOND.	veri-tū.	locū-tū.	menti-tū.

## ACTIVE FORMS.

PART. PRES.	verē-n-s.	loqu-ē-n-s.	menti-ē-n-s.
FUT.	veri-tūr-us.	locū-tūr-us.	menti-tūr-us.
INF. FUT.	veri-tūr-um esse.	locū-tūr-um esse.	menti-tūr-um esse.

## PASSIVE IN MEANING.

GERUNDIVE.	vere-nd-us.	loqu-e-nd-us.	menti-e-nd-us.
------------	-------------	---------------	----------------

## 136. LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS,

FOR STUDY AND REFERENCE.

I. Admiror,	admirārī,	admirātus sum,	<i>admire.</i>
In like manner conjugate :			
altercor,	<i>wrangle.</i>	glōrior,	<i>brag.</i>
cavillor,	<i>rally, criticise.</i>	lāmentor,	<i>make lamentation.</i>
cōnor,	<i>endeavor.</i>	lucror,	<i>make gain, profit.</i>
cōnspicor,	<i>catch sight of.</i>	luctor,	<i>wrestle.</i>
contemplor,	<i>gaze at.</i>	lūdificor,	<i>make sport of, fool.</i>
exsecror,	<i>curse.</i>	rixor,	<i>squabble.</i>
II. Misereor,	miserērī,	miseritus sum,	<i>pity (w. Gen.).</i>
polliceor,	pollicērī,	pollicitus sum,	<i>promise.</i>
tueor,	tuērī,	(tuitus sum),	} <i>protect.</i>
tūtor,	tūtārī,	tūtātus sum,	
(videor,	vidērī,	vīsus sum,	<i>seem).</i>
fateor,	fatērī,	fassus sum,	<i>confess.</i>
III. Amplector,	amplectī,	amplexus sum,	<i>embrace.</i>
ēgredior,	ēgredī,	ēgressus sum,	<i>(step) go out.</i>
ingredior,	ingredī,	ingressus sum,	<i>enter on.</i>
irāscor,	irāscī,	irātus sum,	<i>get angry.</i>
lābor (dēlābor),	lābī,	lapsus sum,	<i>slip (down).</i>
moriōr,	morī,	mortuus sum,	<i>die.</i>
nanciscor,	nanciscī,	nactus sum,	<i>get.</i>
nascor,	nascī,	nātus sum,	<i>be born.</i>
nītor,	nītī,	nīsus sum,	<i>struggle.</i>
obliviscor,	obliviscī,	oblitus sum,	<i>forget (w. Gen.).</i>
patior,	patī,	passus sum,	<i>suffer.</i>
proficiscor,	proficiscī,	profectus sum,	<i>set out.</i>
revertor,	revertī,	[reversus sum],	} <i>return.</i>
[revertō,	revertere],	revertī,	
sequor,	sequī,	secūtus sum,	<i>follow.</i>
exsequor,	exsequī,	exsecūtus sum,	<i>carry out, execute.</i>
ulciscor,	ulciscī,	ultus sum,	<i>avenge.</i>
ūtor,	ūtī,	ūsus sum,	<i>use (w. Abl.).</i>
(vehor,	vehī,	vectus sum,	<i>ride.</i>
vescor,	vescī,	—	<i>feed on (w. Abl.).</i>
IV. Blandior,	blandirī,	blandītus sum,	<i>flatter (w. Dat.).</i>
orior (Irreg.),	orirī,	crtus sum,	<i>rise.</i>



## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Dum cervus imāginem suam contemplātur in rīvulō, subito prope canēs tollunt latrātum. 2. Duo viātōrēs asinum in sōlitūdine cōspiciātī sunt. Accurrunt laetī et capiunt. Mox oritur contentiō. Dum illi dē eā rē rixantur, asinus aufūgit ac neuter quidquam lucrātus est. 3. Fabrō pauperī secūris dēlapsa est in fluvium profundum. Tum ille in rīpā sedēns lāmentārī incipit et clāmāre. Deus fluvii ! miserere meī. Deus ēmersit et interrogāvit cūr lāmentārētur. 4. Sturnum cucūlus rogat quōmodo hominēs dē cantū suō loquantur. Sturnus nēsciēbat quōmodo hominēs dē ējus cantū loquerentur. 5. Mūrēs sē ā fēle tuērī cupiēbant.

B. 1. Urbī Myndiōrum, quanquam ipsa erat exigua, permāgnae et magnificae erant portae. Cavillātus est ideō Diogenēs. Cīvēs, inquit, claudite portās nē urbs vōbīs ēgrediātur. 2. Cum Canius Jūlus cum imperātōre Gājō Caligulā diū fuisset altercātus, tyrannus ille dixit : Ineptā spē vidēris tibi blandiri. Ad mortem tē dūci jussī. 3. Soror quotīdiē equō vehēbatur. 4. Stultus amīcō cōfīdit, cūjus fidem adversō tempore nōn est expertus. 5. Ad bellum proficiscēns imperātor filiolum amplexus est. 6. Fatēre peccāta ut veniam nanciscāris. 7. Cūr oblītus es magistrī ? 8. Herculēs cum duās cerneret viās, ūnam Voluptātis, alteram Virtūtis, diū dubitāvit utram ingredi melius esset. Tandem Virtūtem secūtus est.

## II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Would that you were not making lamentations. 2. A certain braggart having (*cum*) returned to (*revertō*) his native land began-to-boast (Imperf.) about his famous achievements (*facinus*). As he seemed to be lying, the boys laughed-at him. 3. The liberty, which we enjoy (*ūtor*), was handed-down (*trādō*, 115) to us by our fathers. 4. The king promised his son-in-law the half (*dīmidium*) of his kingdom. 5. I will endeavor to carry out my promises (*prōmissum*). 6. Noth-



ing has been born this year more beautiful than my daughter.  
7. The son avenged the cruel death of his father.

B. 1. If you lie (Fut.) you will not be believed. 2. Why, O parents, are you cursing your children? 3. While the stag is admiring his horns, the hunter pierces his throat with an arrow. 4. Bad boys like to [= willingly] fool old men. 5. Diomēdēs, king of the Thracians, had mares (*equa*) which fed on (Abl.) human flesh (Pl.). 6. Antaeus, son of the Earth, used-to-wrestle (Impf.) with strangers (*hospes, itis*). As he was forcing (*cōgō*, 3.) Hercules to (*ut*) wrestle with him (*sēcum*), the hero (*hērōs*) said: If I wrestle [= shall wrestle] with you, you will die. 7. Which path in (Gen.) life shall I enter on?

☞ Reading Lesson XVI., p. 173.

---

#### XLIV. IMPERATIVE.

**137.** 1. The Imperative has two forms: the First and the Second (sometimes called the Future) Imperative.

The First Imperative has only the Second Person.

*amā*, love (*thou*).

*amāte*, love (*ye*).

*amāre*, be (*thou*) loved.

*amāmini*, be (*ye*) loved.

2. The Second Imperative has both Second and Third Persons.

*amātō*, *thou* shalt love.

*amātō*, *he* shall love.

*amātōte*, *ye* shall love.

*amantō*, *they* shall love.

*amātor*, *thou* shalt be loved.

*amātor*, *he* shall be loved.

*amantor*, *they* shall be loved.

The Second Imperative is used chiefly in laws and maxims.

3. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive.

*amem*, let me love.

*amēmus*, let us love.

*amer*, let me be loved.

*amēmur*, let us be loved.

4. The Negative of the Imperative is *nē*, *not*, *nēve* (*neu*), and *not*.

5. In the ordinary language the Negative Imperative of the Second Person is represented by

- 1.) *Nōli* (Pl. *Nōlite*), *Refuse*, with the Inf., or by
- 2.) *Nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive.

The Third Person Positive and Negative is represented by the Present Subjunctive, the Third Person Negative by the Perfect Subjunctive.

The Second Person Subjunctive is used of an imaginary "you."

#### POSITIVE.

- 2 P. *Crēde*, *believe*; *crēditō*, *thou shalt believe*; *crēdās*, *you must believe*.
- 3 P. *Crēdat*, *let him believe*; *crēditō*, *he shall believe*.

#### NEGATIVE.

- 2 P. *Nōli crēdere* (*nē crediderīs*), *do not believe*; *nē crēditō*, *thou shalt not believe*; *nē crēdās*, *you must not believe*.
- 3 P. *Nē crēdat* (*nē crēdiderit*), *let him not believe*; *nē crēditō*, *he shall not believe*.

#### EXERCISES.

##### I. Translate into English:


1. *Mātrōna* quaedam, cum *ōrnāmenta* sua *Cornēliae* ostentāvisset, festinābat discēdere. Sed *Cornēlia*: *Nōli* discēdere, inquit, et traxit eam sermōne dōnec ē scholā revertērunt pueri. Tum: *Aspice*, inquit; haec sunt mea *ornāmenta*. 2. Cum duo *anguēs* apud *Tiberium Gracchum* *comprehēnsi* essent: *Fēmina*, inquit, *ēmittātur*. 3. *Nē* *humātō* in urbe *cadāver*. 4. *Agāsō* *juveni* dixit: *Nē* *cōnsēderīs* sub *asinō*. 5. *Nē* *rixēris* cum *fatuō*. 6. *Audiāmus* alteram partem. 7. *Portae* *prīmā* *lūce* *aperiuntor*, ante *sōlis* *occāsum* *clauduntor*. 8. *Ulciscāmur* *patriae* *injūriās*. 9. *Nē* *occīditō* *hominem*. 10. *Leō* dixit: *Restat* *quarta* *pars*. At *nē* *quisquam* *vestrum* *audeat* eam *tangere*.

##### II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. Believe me. Let me be believed. 2. Do not touch wine. 3. [My] friend seemed to me to say: Since (*quoniam*)

you did not come-to-my-help (*mihī subvenīre*) [when I was] living, do not suffer my death to be unavenged (*inultus, a, um*). 4. The fox and the wolf together (*ūnā*) approached the lion's cave. Let us enter, said the wolf. Let us not enter, rejoined the fox, for I see no tracks (*vestigium*) backward. 5. Admire the wise, imitate (*imitārī*) the good. 6. You must not quarrel with a stronger [man].

B. 1. One of the mice said: Let us tie a bell to the cat. Well (*jam*), said another, do you tie the bell. 2. My father says every day (*quotidiē*): You [= one] must not judge men by [their] clothes and personal-appearance (*forma*). 3. Let the judge hear the other side. 4. The wisest of the frogs said: Do not demand another king. 5. First (*primum*) catch [your] hare. 6. Let not wicked men dare to bribe (*corrumpō, 3.*) the gods by gifts. 7. Do not flatter yourself; I have ordered you to be led to execution (*mors*).

 Reading Lesson XVII., p. 173.

---

## XLV. ADVERBS.

**138. Adverbs** are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of the corresponding adjectives.

1. Adjectives of the Second Declension form the adverb in *ē* (mutilated Ablative).

*altus, lofty, altē; pulcher, beautiful, pulchrē; miser, wretched, miserē.*

2. The Adjectives of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding *-ter* to the stem; stems in *-nt* dropping the *t*, and stems in a **K**-mute inserting *i* before the ending.

*fortis, brave, forti-ter; ferōx, wild, ferōc-i-ter; prūdēns, foreseeing, prūden-ter.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*audāx. bold, audāc-ter* (seldom *audāc-i-ter*); *difficilis, hard to do, difficul-ter* and *difficili-ter*. But instead of these, generally, *nōn facile, vix, aegrē.*

3. The Ablative of some adjectives serves as an adverb :

tūtō, *safely*; falsō, *falsely*; subitō, *suddenly*; continuō, *forthwith*; imprōvisō, *unexpectedly*; prīmō, *at first*.

cōnsultē and cōnsultō, *purposely*; certē, *at least*, and certō, *certainly*.

rārē, *thinly*, and rārō, *seldom*; vērē, *in truth*, and vērō, *true but*.

rectē, *correctly*, and rectā, *straightway*; dexterē, *skilfully*, and dexterā or dextrā, *to the right*; sinistrā and laevā, *to the left hand*.

4. The Accusative neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

Multum, *much*; paulum, *a little*; nimium, *too much*; cēterum, *for the rest*; primum, *first*; postrēmum, *finally*; potissimum, *chiefly, preferably*; facile, *easily*; dulce, *sweetly*; triste, *sadly*; impūne, *scot-free*.

### 139.

#### Comparison of Adverbs.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
altē,	<i>loftily.</i>	altius,		altissimē.
pulchrē,	<i>beautifully.</i>	pulchrius,		pulcherrimē.
miserē,	<i>poorly, piteously.</i>	miserius,		miserrimē.
fortiter,	<i>bravely.</i>	fortius,		fortissimē.
audācter,	<i>boldly.</i>	audācius,		audācissimē.
tūtō,	<i>safely.</i>	tūtius,		tūtissimē.
facile,	<i>easily.</i>	facilius,		facillimē.
bene,	<i>well.</i>	melius,		optimē.
male,	<i>ill.</i>	pējus,		pessimē.
[parvus],	<i>small.</i>	minus,	<i>less.</i>	minimē, <i>least, by no means</i>
[māgnus],	<i>great.</i>	magis,	<i>more,</i>	maximē, <i>most.</i>
multum,	<i>much.</i>	plūs,	<i>more.</i>	plūrimum.
cito,	<i>quickly.</i>	citius,		citissimē.
diū,	<i>long (time).</i>	dīūtius,		dīūtissimē.
saepe,	<i>often.</i>	saepius,		saeplissimē.
nūper,	<i>recently.</i>	—,		nūperrimē.
satis,	<i>enough.</i>	satius,	<i>better.</i>	

## EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English :

(Substituting Adverbs for the Adjectives in parentheses) :

A. 1. Passer (callidus) cēperat culicem. Culex (miser) clāmābat : Concēde mihi vītā. (Ferōx) respondet ille : (Citus) tē dēvorābō. Passerem (festīnāns) edentem (conti-



nuus) cōspicātur accipiter et (erūdēlis) unguibus corripit. Tum passer (anxius) clāmāvit : Cūr mē necās ? Nihil peccāvī. Sed omnia frūstrā. Dum accipiter passerem (cupidus) dēvorat, (subitus) ex āere dēvolat vultur et corripit accipitrem. Magne rēx, clāmat accipiter : Cūr mē (atrōx) interficis ? (Nimius) loqueris, respondit vultur. Vix dixerat et (imprōvīsus) superbō vulturī vēnātor collum sagittā perforāvit. Cūr mē interficis ? (flēbilis) clāmat vultur. Jūre tē interficiō, (superbus) respondet vēnātor. Nam ego sum māgnus, tū es parvus.

B. 1. Pater filium interrogat utra avis tam (suāvis) canat. Fīlius statim : Sine dubiō, inquit, acanthis (suāvior) canit quam luscinia. Pennās (certus) habet pulchriōrēs.

2. Vulpēs (blandissimus) salūtāvit gallinās. Laetum accipite nūntium. Pāx est facta. Dēscendite. (Bonus) monēs, (prūdēns) respondet gallus, quī (optimus) perspexerat fraudem vulpis. (Libēns) dēscendēmus. Canis, quem (dexter) accurrentem vidēō, testis estō. (Dexter) venit canis ? sēcum dixit vulpēs. Ego (sinister) fugiam.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The cow, the sheep, [and] the goat had foolishly made a partnership with the lion. A little (*paulō*) afterward they caught a very large stag. The lion immediately made four (*quattuor*) parts, but haughtily took [them] all. 2. The servants mauled the donkey most pitiably (*miser*). 3. While the travellers are squabbling hotly (Superl. of *acer*) about the donkey, he (*ille*) ran-away swiftly (Superl.). 4. Which of the two is the more violently tortured, the wolf or (*an*) the crane ? 5. The countryman endeavored for-a-very-long-time to restore harmony between his sons. 6. I have observed (*servō*, 1.) all thy precepts most scrupulously (*religiōsus*). 7. In India several (*complūrēs*) women have one husband in-common (*commūnis*, *e*). They very often contend (*certō*, 1.) which wife he (*ille*) loves (*diligō*, 3.) most.



## XLVI. NUMERALS.

**140. Numeral Adjectives.** The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, the hundreds beginning with *ducenti*, *two hundred*, and the plural *milia*, *thousands*, which forms *milium* and *milibus*.

N.	<i>duo</i> , <i>two</i> ,	<i>duae</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> ,	<i>tria</i> .
G.	<i>duōrum</i> ,	<i>duārum</i> ,	<i>duōrum</i> ,	<i>trium</i> ,	
D.	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>duābus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,	
A.	<i>duōs</i> , <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duās</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> ,	<i>tria</i> .
Ab.	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>duābus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i> .	

Like *duo* is declined *ambō*, *-ae*, *-o*, *both*.

**141. 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.**

1 I	<i>ūnus</i> , <i>ūna</i> , <i>ūnum</i>
2 II	<i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i>
3 III	<i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i>
4 IV	<i>quattuor</i>
5 V	<i>quinque</i>
6 VI	<i>sex</i>
7 VII	<i>septem</i>
8 VIII	<i>octo</i>
9 IX	<i>novem</i>
10 X	<i>decem</i>
11 XI	<i>undecim</i>
12 XII	<i>duodecim</i>
13 XIII	<i>tredecim</i>
14 XIV	<i>quattuordecim</i>
15 XV	<i>quindecim</i>
16 XVI	<i>sēdecim</i>
17 XVII	<i>septendecim</i>
18 XVIII	<i>duodēvigintī</i>
19 XIX	<i>undēvigintī</i>
20 XX	<i>vīgintī</i>
21 XXI	<i>vīgintī ūnus</i>
28 XXVIII	<i>duodētrīgintā</i>
29 XXIX	<i>undētrīgintā</i>
30 XXX	<i>trīgintā</i>
40 XL	<i>quadrāgintā</i>

**2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.**

<i>prīmus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> (prior).
<i>secundus</i> (alter).
<i>tertius</i>
<i>quartus</i>
<i>quintus</i>
<i>sextus</i>
<i>septimus</i>
<i>octāvus</i>
<i>nōnus</i>
<i>decimus</i>
<i>undecimus</i>
<i>duodecimus</i>
<i>tertius decimus</i>
<i>quartus decimus</i>
<i>quintus decimus</i>
<i>sextus decimus</i>
<i>septimus decimus</i>
<i>duodēvicēsīmus</i>
<i>undēvicēsīmus</i>
<i>vicēsīmus</i>
<i>vicēsīmus prīmus</i>
<i>duodētricēsīmus</i>
<i>undētricēsīmus</i>
<i>tricēsīmus</i>
<i>quadrāgēsīmus</i>

## 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

50 L	quingūgintā	quingūgēsīmus
60 LX	sexūgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70 LXX	septuūgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80 LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90 XC	nōnūgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100 C	centum	centēsīmus
101 CI	centum et ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus
200 CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
300 CCC	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
400 CCCC	quadrīngentī	quadrīngentēsīmus
500 D (ID)	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
600 DC	sescentī	sescentēsīmus
700 DCC	septīngentī	septīngentēsīmus
800 DCCC	octīngentī	octīngentēsīmus
900 DCCCC	nongentī	nongentēsīmus
1000 M (CIID)	mille	millēsīmus
1001 MI	mille et ūnus	millēsīmus prīmus
1101 MCI	mille centum ūnus	millēsīmus centēsīmus prī- mus
2000 MM	duo mīlia	bis millēsīmus
5000 IDID	quīque mīlia	quīquīēs millēsīmus
10,000 CCIIDID	decem mīlia	decīēs millēsīmus
21,000	ūnum et vīgintī mīlia	semel et vīcīēs millēsīmus
100,000 CCCIIDID	centum mīlia	centīēs millēsīmus
	centēna mīlia	
1,000,000	decīēs centēna mīlia	decīēs centīēs millēsīmus

Centēna mīlia is often omitted after the numeral adverbs: decīēs = 1 million, trīcīēs = 3 millions, etc.

## 142.

## COMPOUND NUMERALS.

- From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately: *decem et trēs*.
- The numbers 18, 19, 23, 29, etc., are commonly expressed by subtraction.
- From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English: *twenty-one*, *vīgintī ūnus*; or *one and twenty*, *ūnus et vīgintī*.  
As, *21 years old*: *annōs ūnum et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnum), ūnum et vīgintī annos nātus*.

4. From 100 on, *et* is inserted after the first numeral, or omitted altogether : *mille et centum ūnus*, or, *mille centum ūnus* = 1101.

☞ The utmost readiness in the use of the numerals should be insisted on. Hence the necessity for daily review.

**143. Rules of Syntax :** 1. In the Singular *mille* is an indeclinable Adjective ; in the Plural it is a Substantive and takes the Genitive.

<i>mille militēs,</i>	<i>a thousand soldiers.</i>
<i>duo mīlia militum,</i>	<i>two thousand soldiers.</i>

2. Space How Much is put in the Accusative with *longus*, *lātus*, and *altus*.

*Fossa pedēs trecentōs longa est, sex pedēs alta,* *The ditch is three hundred feet long, six feet deep.*

3. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative.

*Turris decem pedibus altior est quam mūrus,* *The tower is (by) ten feet higher than the wall.*

### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :

1. *Suētōnius vītās duodecim Caesarum scripsit, quās octo librīs complexus est, unde hęc sūmpta sunt.* 2. *Jūlius tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōfossus mortuus est sextō et quinquāgēsīmō aetātis annō. Percussōrum nēmō trienniō supervixit (survived).* 3. *Augustus nātus est eōdem annō, quō Cicerō cōsul est creātus, sexāgēsīmō tertiō ante Christum nātum. Vixit annōs septuāgintā sex, diēs quinque et trīgintā. Testāmentum annō et quattuor mēnsibus ante mortem fēcērat.* 4. *Tiberius tertiō et vicēsīmō annō imperiī dēcessit, cum septuāgintā octo annōs vixisset.* 5. *Claudius vixit annōs sexāgintā quattuor, imperāvit quattuordecim.* 6. *Mortuus est Nerō secundō et tricēsīmō aetātis annō, imperiī quartō decimō.* 7. *Galba exstinctus est tertiō et septuāgēsīmō aetātis annō, im-*

periī mēse septimō. 8. Othō pūgiōne sē trājēcit duodē-  
 quadrāgēsīmō aetātis annō, nōnāgēsīmō imperiī diē. 9. Vitel-  
 lius jugulātus est annō vitae septimō quinquāgēsīmō. 10.  
 Vespasiānus nōnō cōsulātū, undēseptuāgēsīmō aetātis annō  
 extinctus est. 11. Excessit Titus Vespasiānī filius alterō et  
 quadrāgēsīmō aetātis annō. 12. Occisus est Domitiānus annō  
 aetātis quadrāgēsīmō quintō, imperiī quintō decimō. 13. In  
 urbe sunt mille militēs; duo mīlia hostium urbem obsident.  
 14. Templum Dīānae Ephesiae quadringentōs quinquāgintā  
 pedēs longum, ducentōs vīginti pedēs lātum fuit.

---

## XLVII. NUMERALS—(CONTINUED).

### 144.

### 3. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

1 singulī, -ae, -a, <i>one each.</i>	23 vicēnī bīnī, bīnī et vicēnī
2 bīnī, -ae, -a, <i>two each.</i>	28 duodētricēnī
3 ternī	29 undētricēnī
4 quaternī	30 tricēnī
5 quīnī	40 quadrāgēnī
6 sēnī	50 quinquāgēnī
7 septēnī	60 sexāgēnī
8 octōnī	70 septuāgēnī
9 novēnī	80 octōgēnī
10 dēnī	90 nōnāgēnī
11 undēnī	100 cēntēnī
12 duodēnī	200 ducēnī
13 ternī dēnī	300 trecēnī
14 quaternī dēnī	400 quadringēnī
15 quīnī dēnī	500 quingēnī
16 sēnī dēnī	600 sexcēnī
17 septēnī dēnī	700 septingēnī
18 octōnī dēnī, duodēvicēnī	800 octingēnī
19 novēnī dēnī, undēvicēnī	900 nongēnī
20 vicēnī	1,000 singula mīlia
21 vicēnī singulī	100,000 centēna mīlia

145. *Numeral Adverbs.*

1 semel,	<i>once.</i>	22 bis et viciēs,	viciēs et
2 bis,	<i>twice.</i>	bis,	viciēs bis
3 ter		30 triciēs	
4 quater		40 quadrāgiēs	
5 quinquīēs (quinquiēns)		50 quinquāgiēs	
6 sexiēs		60 sexāgiēs	
7 septiēs		70 septuāgiēs	
8 octiēs		80 octōgiēs	
9 noviēs		90 nōnāgiēs	
10 deciēs		100 centiēs	
11 undeciēs		200 ducentiēs	
12 duodeciēs		300 trecentiēs	
13 ter deciēs, tredeciēs		400 quadringentiēs	
14 quater deciēs, quattuordeciēs		500 quingentiēs	
15 quinquīēs deciēs, quindecīēs		600 sexcentiēs	
16 sexiēs deciēs, sēdeciēs		700 septingentiēs	
17 septiēs deciēs		800 octingentiēs	
18 duodēviciēs, octiēs deciēs		900 nongentiēs	
19 undēviciēs, noviēs deciēs		1,000 milliēs	
20 viciēs		2,000 bis milliēs	
21 semel et viciēs, viciēs et		100,000 centiēs milliēs	
semel, viciēs semel		1,000,000 milliēs milliēs, deciēs	centiēs milliēs

REMARK.—The Distributives must be used whenever there is repetition, as in the multiplication table :

**D**uo māla, *two apples* ; but bis bīna māla, *twice two apples.*

Tribus pueris trēs dedī nucēs, *I gave three boys three nuts.*

Tribus pueris ternās dedī nucēs, *I gave three boys three nuts apiece.*

☞ When **singuli** is expressed the Cardinal may be used.

## EXERCISES.

I. Give Cardinals, Ordinals, and Distributives for the following numbers :

XLIII. — LXI. — LXVIII. — LXXII. — C. — CLIV. — CLXXXV. —  
CCXVI. — CCCXIV. — CCCLXXXIX. — DXVII. — DCI. — DCCXIII. —  
DCCCXXV. — MCCXXXIX.



## II. Translate into English:

1. Duo puerī sēnās postulāvērunt nucēs; utriūque quīnās dedī. 2. Id dixī sexcentiēs. 3. In singulīs nāvibus erant ferē octōgintā trēs hominēs. 4. Singulīs vestrum mille sester-tiōs darī jussit. 5. Puerī dēna mīlia passuum ambulā-bant. 6. Caesar deciēs sēnōs addidit trecentīs et quinque diē-bus. 7. Ter quīnī sunt quindecim.

## III. Translate into Latin:

1. Cicero was six years (*sexennium*) older than Caesar, twenty years older than Sallust, who married (*dūcō*) Terentia, whom he (*ille* = Cicero) had divorced (*repudiō*, 1.) after a marriage (*mātrimōnium*) of thirty years. The same [Terentia] lived one hundred and three years. 2. Corœbus conquered in the first Olympiad (*Olympias*, *ādis*, fem.) in the year 776 (ordinal) before the birth of Christ [= Christ born]. 3. I will give two books to each scholar, ten books to each class (*ōrdō*). 4. What o'clock is it [= The how many 'th (*quotus*, *a*, *um*) hour is it]? It is nine o'clock [= the ninth hour]. 5. Three thousand foot-soldiers are besieging the city; one thousand cavalry are ravaging (*populor*, 1.) the country (*ager*). 6. Twice two thousand is four thousand. 7. Nine years, cried the augur, we shall endure (*perferō*, 3.) the toils of war. In the tenth Troy (*Trōja*) shall fall.

☞ Reading Lesson XIX., p. 175.

## XLVIII. IRREGULAR VERBS.

146. I. 1. *Compounds of sum, I am.*

ab-sum,	<i>I am away, absent.</i>	Perf. ob-sum,	<i>I am against, I hurt.</i>
āfuī.		Perf. obfuī or offuī.	
ad-sum,	<i>I am present.</i>	Perf. affuī.	<i>I am over, I superintend.</i>
dē-sum,	<i>I am wanting.</i>	prō-sum,	<i>I am for, I profit.</i>
in-sum,	<i>I am in.</i>	sub-sum,	<i>I am under. No Perf.</i>
inter-sum,	<i>I am between.</i>	super-sum,	<i>I am, or remain, over.</i>

REMARK.—Only **absum** and **praesum** form present participles: **absēns**, *absent*, and **praesēns**, *present*.

147. 2. Prōsum, *I profit.*

In the forms of prōsum, prōd- is used before vowels.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est, prō-sumus, prōd-estis, prō-sunt,	prō-sim,
IMPERFECT.	prōd-eram,	prōd-essem,
FUTURE.	prōd-erō,	
PERFECT.	prō-fui,	prō-fuerim,
PLUPERFECT.	prō-fueram,	prō-fuissem.
FUT. PERF.	prō-fuerō.	

INFINITIVE. PRES. prōd-esse; PERF. prō-fuisse; FUT. prō-futūrum esse.

148. 3. Possum, *I am able, I can.*

Possum is compounded of pot (potis, pote) and sum; f is dropped after t; and t becomes s before s.

INDICATIVE.	PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
SING.—1. pos-sum, <i>I am able, can.</i>	pos-sim,	<i>I be able.</i>
2. pot-es,	pos-sis,	
3. pot-est,	pos-sit,	
PLUR.—1. pos-sumus,	pos-simus,	
2. pot-estis,	pos-sitis,	
3. pos-sunt.	pos-sint.	
IMPERFECT.		
SING.—1. pot-eram, <i>I was able, could.</i>	pos-sem,	<i>I were, might be, able.</i>
2. pot-erās, etc.	pos-sēs, etc.	
FUTURE.		
SING.—1. pot-erō, <i>I shall be able.</i>		
2. pot-eris, etc.		
PERFECT.		
SING.—1. pot-ui, <i>I have been able, etc.</i>	pot-uerim,	<i>I have, may have, been able, etc.</i>
PLUPERFECT.		
SING.—1. pot-ueram, <i>I had been able, etc.</i>	pot-uissem,	<i>I had, might have been able, etc.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.		
SING.—1. pot-uerō, <i>I shall have been able, etc.</i>		
INFINITIVE. PRES. Pos-se, <i>to be able.</i> PERF. Pot-uisse, <i>to have been able.</i>		

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Peregrīnus quīdam alterō pede stāns Lacōnī dīcēbat : Tū tantum tempus quantum ego pede ūnō stāre nōn potes. Lacō : Minimē, inquit : sed ex ānscribis quīvīs tē superāre potest. 2. Diogenēs Cynicus prōjici sē jussit inhumātum. Tum amīcī : Volucrisne et ferīs ? Minimē vērō, inquit, sed bacillum propter mē pōnitōte ut abigam. Quī (*how*) poteris ? illī respondērunt ; nōn enim sentiēs. Quid igitur mihi ferārum laniātus oberit nihil sentienti ? 3. Thrasō reversus in patriam, unde aliquot annōs āfuerat, jactābat sua facinora. Inter alia ostendēbat spatiī longitūdinem. Nēmō, inquit, praeter mē hanc longitūdinem potuit saltū superāre. Ūnus dē circulō : Nōn quaerimus, inquit, quid facere potuerīs, sed quid nunc facere possīs.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The fly said to the weary bull : If I weigh you down too much, I will fly away. That will do me no good (*prōdesse*), answered the bull. 2. Poor men have often been-of-service (*prōdesse*) to rich men. 3. The soldiers, whose bravery all admire, are here (*adsum*). 4. Those who have been absent will learn those poems which the other scholars have learned. 5. Marcus was-in-command-of (*praesum* w. Dat.) the army.

149. II. Eō, *I go*. INF. 1-re.

Stem *i-*, which before *a*, *o*, *u* becomes *e*.

INDICATIVE.	PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>I go.</i>		<i>I be going.</i>
SING.—1. e-ō,		e-a-m,
2. i-s,		e-ā-s,
3. i-t,		e-a-t,
PLUR.—1. i-mus,		e-ā-mus,
2. i-tis,		e-ā-tis,
3. e-u-nt.		e-a-nt.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
IMPERF.	<i>i-ba-m, I went.</i>	<i>i-re-m, I were going.</i>
FUT.	<i>i-b-ō, I shall go.</i>	
PERF.	<i>i-vī (compds. -i-ī), I have gone.</i>	<i>i-ve-ri-m (ex i-e-ri-m).</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>i-ve-ra-m (ex i-e-ra-m), I had gone.</i>	<i>i-vi-sse-m (ex i-sse-m).</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>i-ve-rō (ex i-e-r-ō).</i>	
INFINITIVE: PRES. <i>i-re.</i> PERF. <i>i-vi-sse (i-sse).</i> FUT. <i>i-tūr-um esse.</i>		
PARTICIPLES: PRES. <i>i-ē-n-s.</i> GEN. <i>e-u-nt-is.</i> FUT. <i>i-tūr-us.</i>		
GERUND: <i>e-u-nd-i.</i>		
SUPINE: <i>i-tum, to go.</i>		

## IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.	SECOND.
SING.—2. <i>i, go thou.</i>	2. <i>i tō, thou shalt go.</i>
	3. <i>i-tō, he shall go.</i>
PLUR.—2. <i>i-te, go ye.</i>	2. <i>i-tōte, ye shall go.</i>
	3. <i>e-u-ntō. they shall go.</i>

**150.** III. *Ferō, I bear.* INF. *fer-re.*

The vowel *i* is dropped before *t* and *s*, and *ē* before *r*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
	<i>I bear.</i>	<i>I am borne.</i>	<i>I be borne.</i>
SING.—1.	<i>fer-ō,</i>	SING.—1. <i>fer-o-r,</i>	<i>fer-a-r,</i>
	2. <i>fer-s,</i>	2. <i>fer-ris,</i>	<i>fer-ā-ris,</i>
	3. <i>fer-t,</i>	3. <i>fer-tur,</i>	<i>fer-ā-tur,</i>
PLUR.—1.	<i>fer-i-mus,</i>	PLUR.—1. <i>fer-i-mur,</i>	<i>fer-ā-mur,</i>
	2. <i>fer-tis,</i>	2. <i>fer-i-mini,</i>	<i>fer-ā-mini,</i>
	3. <i>fer-u-nt.</i>	3. <i>fer-u-ntur.</i>	<i>fer-a-ntur.</i>
IMPERF.:	<i>fer-ē-ba-m,</i>	IMPERF.:	<i>fer-ē-ba-r,</i>
FUTURE:	<i>fer-a-m.</i>	FUTURE:	<i>fer-a-r.</i>
PERFECT:	<i>tul-i,</i>	PERFECT:	<i>lā-t-us sum,</i>
PLUPERF.:	<i>tul-e-ra-m,</i>	PLUPERF.:	<i>lā-t-us eram,</i>
F. PERF.:	<i>tul-e-r-ō.</i>	F. PERF.:	<i>lā-t-us essem.</i>
INF.	PRES. <i>fer-re.</i>	INF.	PRES. <i>fer-rī.</i>
	PERF. <i>tul-i-sse.</i>		PERF. <i>lā-t-um esse.</i>
	FUT. <i>lā-tūr-um esse.</i>		FUT. <i>lā-t-um irī.</i>
			F. PERF. <i>lā-t-um fore.</i>
PART.	PRES. <i>fer-ē-n-s.</i>	PART.	PERFECT. <i>lā-t-us.</i>
	FUT. <i>lā-tūr-us.</i>		GERUNDIVE. <i>fer-e-nd-us.</i>
SUPINE:	<i>lā-t-um.</i>		
GERUND:	<i>fer-e-nd-i.</i>		

## IMPERATIVE.

FIRST.		SECOND.		FIRST.		SECOND.	
SING.—2. fer,	2. fer-tō.	3. fer-tō.	SING.—2. fer-re,	2. fer-tor.	3. fer-tor.		
PLUR.—2. fer-te,	2. fer-tōte.	3. fer-u-ntō.	PLUR.—2. fer-i-mini,	3. fer-u-ntor.			

## COMPOUNDS OF ferō :

af-fer-ō.	af-fer-re,	at-tul-i.	al-lā-tum.	<i>to bear to.</i>
au-fer-ō.	au-fer-re.	abs-tul-i.	ab-lā-tum.	<i>to bear away.</i>
cōn-fer-ō.	cōn-fer-re.	con-tul-i.	col-lā-tum.	<i>to collect.</i>
dif-fer-ō.	dif-fer-re.	dis-tul-i.	dī-lā-tum.	<i>to put off.</i>
ef-fer-ō.	ef-fer-re.	ex-tul-i.	ē-lā-tum.	<i>to carry out.</i>
of-fer-ō.	of-fer-re.	ob-tul-i.	ob-lā-tum.	<i>to offer.</i>

REMARK.—**Suf-ferō.** *I undergo*, has the Perfect **sus-tin-ui** (**sus-tul-i**, **sub-lā-tum**, being appropriated to **toll-ō**).

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Rānac, cum ōrārent ut ā cicōniā liberārentur, deum nōn movēbant querēlīs. Benīgnum, inquit, et placidum rēgem nōn tulistis ; jam ferum et barbarum fertōte. 2. Equus, ā cervō pulsus, tandem auxilium petīvit ab homine. Rediit cum homine, ac cervum vīcit. Sed jam ipse hominī servīre cōgitur, equitem dorsō ferre et ōre frēnum. 3. Cum vulpēs cauta ante spēluncam procul stāret salutāns rēgem, leō : Cūr nōn intrās ? interrogāvit. Vulpēs respondet : Quod videō vestīgia incuntium multa, at nulla exeuntium. 4. Eāmus et miserīs amicīs auxilium ferāmus. 5. Rūsticus, cum exīret in agrōs ad opus suum, filiolum reliquit in cūnīs dormientem. Cum redisset, cūnās ēversās vīdit. 6. Herculēs, cum sēcum dēliberāret quam vītae dēberet inīre, exiit in sōlitūdinem. 7. Virtūs : Mēcum, inquit, tūtissimus ībis.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. Do not put off to (*in*) the morrow (*crastinus diēs*) what you can do to-day (*hodiē*). 2. As the Greeks were returning (*redeō*) from (*ab*) Ilium, many perished by shipwreck (*naufragium*). 3. Would that the bad were not preferred (*praeferō* with *Dat.*) to the good. 4. The spider persuaded the



fly to enter (*incō* w. Acc.) her (*suus*) house. 5. Bring me aid. If you do not (*nisi* with Fut.) bring me aid, I shall not be able to defend the city. 6. The old-man went out (*excō*) into the forest to cut logs.

**151. IV. Fīō, I become. INF. fierī (Passive of facio).**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	fīō, fis, fit, <i>I am made, I become.</i> (fimus, fitis), fiunt.	fiam, fiās, etc.
IMPERF.	fiēbam, <i>I was made, I became.</i>	fierem.
FUT.	fiam, <i>I shall be made (become).</i>	
PERF.	factus sum, <i>I became.</i>	factus sim.
PLUPER.	factus eram.	factus essem.
F. PERF.	factus erō.	
INF. PRES.	fieri,	IMPER. FIRST. fi (fite).
PERF.	factum esse.	SECOND. (fitō, fitō, etc.).
FUT.	futūrum esse. <i>or fore.</i>	PARTIC. PERF. factus.
F. PER.	factum fore.	GERUNDIVE. faciendus.

**152. V. Volō, I will ; nōlō, I will not ; mālō, I will rather.**

INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		
volō,	nōlō,	mālō,
vis,	nōn vis,	māvīs,
vult,	nōn vult,	māvult,
volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
IMPERFECT.		
volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
FUTURE.		
volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERFECT.		
volui.	nōlui.	mālui.
SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		
velim (like sim).	nōlim.	mālim,
IMPERFECT.		
vellem.	nōllem.	māllem.
IMPER. FIRST. S.	nōlī.	PL. nōlīte.
SECOND. S.	nōlītō.	PL. nōlītōte.
	nōlītō.	nōluntō.
INF. PRES. velle,	nōlle,	mālle.
PERF. voluisse,	nōluisse.	māluisse.
PART. volēns.	nōlēns.	

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Tantalus sitiēns stābat in aquā et cum bibere vellet mentōque summam aquam attingeret, aqua recēdēbat. 2. Diogenī dixit Alexander : Dīc (Imper. of *dīcō*) sī quid vīs. Nunc quidem paululum ā sōle, respondit. Offēcerat vidēlicet aprīcantī. Ad haec Alexander : Nisi Alexander essem, Diogenēs esse vellem. 3. Cucūlus sturnum interrogāvit quid hominēs dē sē jūdicārent. Hōc tibi dīcere nōn possum ; nusquam tuī fit mentiō. Sī ita est, inquit irātus, in posterum semper dē mē ipse loquar. 4. Mālumus esse infēlicēs quam bonī. 5. Sī vīs pācem, parā bellum.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The mice once-upon-a-time were consulting how they could protect themselves from the cat. One of them urged that a bell be attached to the cat. But as none (*nullus*) of the mice was willing himself to attach the bell, the plan did no good. 2. The Greeks, not having (*cum*) been able to take Troy (*Trōja*) in (*per*) ten years, were nevertheless (*nihilō minus*) unwilling to abandon the undertaking (*inceptō dēsistere*). 3. The mother asks the boy why he refused (*nōlō*) to carry out [her] orders (*jussum, ī*). 4. Three boys were crossing (*trānseō*) a bridge. [There] is (*fīō*) [heard] a creaking (*crepitus*). Frightened by the noise, two of (*ex*) them returned. The third crossed the bridge in-safety (*tūtus*).

☞ Reading Lesson XX., p. 175.

## XLIX. WHITHER ? WHENCE ? WHERE ?

153. I. 1. *Whither* is commonly expressed by *in* or *ad* with the Accusative.

In Āfricam,	To Africa.
Ad Rōmam,	To (before) Rome (neighborhood of Rome).



## 154.

## VOCABULARY.

CITIES.		COUNTRIES.	
Aegae, ārum,	<i>Aegae.</i>	Aegyptus, i,	<i>Egypt.</i>
Argī, ōrūm,	<i>Argos.</i>	Ītalia, ae,	<i>Italy.</i>
Colchī, ōrum,	<i>Colchis.</i>	Macedonia, ae,	<i>Macedon.</i>
Crotōna, ae,	<i>Crotona.</i>	_____	_____
Thēbae, ārum,	<i>Thebes.</i>	Epirus,	<b>Epirus, i.</b>
Trōja, ae,	<i>Troy.</i>	Gaul,	<b>Gallia, ae.</b>
_____	_____	Illyria,	<b>Illyricum, i.</b>
Corfinium,	<b>Corfinium, i.</b>	_____	PERSONS.
Dyrrachium,	<b>Dyrrāchium, i.</b>	Helena, ae,	<i>Helen.</i>
_____	_____	Philippus, i,	<i>Philip.</i>
_____	_____	Pompējus, i,	<i>Pompey.</i>

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Paris Helenam Trōjam abduxit. Vīgintī annōs Trōjae vixit. Vetula Spartam rediit. 2. Menelāus tempestāte in Aegyptum dēlātus Thēbās ascendit. 3. Crotōnae in Ītaliā inferiōre nōbilissimum fuit Jūnōnis templum. 4. Servus fugitīvus ex Āfricā Rōmam dēductus est. 5. Asinō Athēnīs Megaram vectus sum. 6. Cum Rōmae essem, mīrae rei spectātor fuī. 7. Philippus Macedoniae rēx Aegīs necātus est. 8. Phrixus mortuus est Colchīs. Pelias Jāsonem Colchōs mīsit. Jāsō et Mēdēa Colchīs effūgerunt. 9. Hannibal tricēsimo sextō dēmum annō Carthāginem revertit. 10. Auxilia Carthāgine vēnerunt. 11. Nūntius victōriae māgnō cum gaudiō Carthāginī exceptus est. 12. Vir rūre revertit ; uxor domō profūgerat ; irātus ille omnēs, quōs domī repperit, servōs castigāvit, rūs rediit. 13. Agamemnōn mille nāvēs ad Trōjam duxit. 14. Pompējus Lūceriā proficiscitur Canusium, Canusiō Brundusium.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. Hercules, driven (*expellō*) from Argos, betook himself (*sē cōnferre*) to Libya. 2. I lived ten years (*decennium*) at Sulmo (Gen. *ōnis*). 3. Departing from Gaul, Caesar hastened

(*contendō*, 3.) to Italy, and when he had crossed the Rubicon (Gen. *ōnis*), he marched (*proficiscor*) to Corfinium. He wished to surprise (*opprimō*, 3.) Pompey at Brundisium, but Pompey had already crossed (*trāiciō*, 3.) to Dyrrachium; and so (*itaque*) he hastened to Rome. When he had arranged (*cōstituō*) everything at Rome, and had sent Valerius to Sardinia, Gajus Antonius to Illyria, he himself set out for Gaul. Recalled (*revocō*, 1.) from Gaul, he marched again to Brundisium, whence he crossed to Epirus. 4. Every-day (*quotīdiē*) I take-a-run (*fugiō*) into the country. 5. We have been at home a long time. When my father returns [= shall have returned] home from the country, we shall move (*migrō*, 1.) from home to the sea-side. 6. Lentulus was lying on the ground.

☞ Reading Lesson XXI., p. 176.

## L. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE — RELATIVE CLAUSES.

**155. 1. In English, Verbs of Saying and Thinking** sometimes take the Accusative and Infinitive. This is the rule in Latin.

**Vespertiliō sē volucrem esse affirmat,** *The bat declares himself to be a bird (that he is a bird).*

**Fēlēs vespertiliōnem mūrem esse putat,** *The cat supposes the bat to be a mouse (the cat supposes that the bat is a mouse).*

Such dependent clauses are said to be in Indirect Discourse.

The Pres. Inf. is used when the action of the Infinitive takes place *at the same time* as the action of the verb of Saying or Thinking.

The Perf. Inf. is used when the action of the Infinitive takes place *before* the action of the verb of Saying or Thinking.

The Fut. Inf. is used when the action of the Infinitive takes place *after* the action of the verb of Saying or Thinking.



So that

The Pres. Inf. is used for Present of the Sayer or Thinker ;  
The Perf. Inf. for the Perfect or any past tense of the Sayer  
or Thinker ;

And the Fut. Perf. for the Future of the Sayer or Thinker.

### PARADIGMS.

ACTIVE.

*Contemporaneous Action.*

PASSIVE.

PRESENT OF THE SPEAKER.

**Dicit :** *tē errāre,*

*He says, that you are going wrong.*

**tē dēcipī,**

*that you are deceived (90, NOTE).*

**Dicēbat :** *tē errāre,*

*He was saying, that you were going wrong.*

**tē dēcipī,**

*that you were deceived.*

*Prior Action.*

PAST TENSE OF THE SPEAKER.

**Dicit :** *tē errāvisse,*

*He says, that you have gone wrong,  
that you went wrong,  
that you have been going wrong.*

**tē dēceptum esse,**

*that you have been,(are) deceived,  
that you were deceived,  
(that people have been deceiving you).*

**Dicēbat :** *tē errāvisse,*

*He was saying, that you had gone wrong,  
that you went wrong,  
that you had been going wrong.*

**tē dēceptum esse,**

*that you had been deceived,  
that you were deceived,  
(that people had been deceiving you).*

*Subsequent Action.*

FUTURE OF THE SPEAKER.

**Dicit :** *tē errātūrum esse,*

*He says, that you are about to go wrong, will (be) go(ing) wrong.*

**tē dēceptum irī,**

*that you (are going to), will, be deceived.*

**Dicēbat :** *tē errātūrum esse,*

*He was saying that you were about to,(would) go wrong.*

**tē dēceptum irī,**

*that you were going to, (would) be deceived.*

2. Relative Clauses that form a part of Accusative and Infinitive sentences are put in the Subjunctive. The Tenses follow the Rule for the Indirect Question (132, 1).

Faber affirmat sē eam secūrim quam deus retulerit amīsisse, *The carpenter affirms that he lost the axe, which the god brought again.*

Faber affirmāvit sē eam secūrim quam deus retulisset amīsisse, *The carpenter affirmed that he lost the axe, which the god brought again.*

The carpenter said : (Ipse) eam secūrim quam retulistī amīsī.

☞ The same rule applies to all Relative Conjunctions such as **quod, quia, because ; quoniam, since, etc.**

### EXERCISES.

#### I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Ōrātor dixit duōs amīcōs ūnā fēcisse iter ; occurrisse in itinere ursum ; alterum arborem cōnscondidisse et pericūlum evītāvisse ; alterum, cum meminisset illam bestiam cadāvera nōn attingere, humī sē prōstrāvisse (fr. *prōsternō*) animamque continuisse, sē mortuum esse simulantem ; accessisse ursum, contrectāvisse jacentem, ōs suum ad hominis ōs aurēsque admōvisse, cadāver esse ratum discessisse ; postea, cum socius quaereret quidnam eī ursus dixisset, respondisse sē ab ursō monitum esse, nē cōnfīderet amīcō, cūjus fidem adversō tempore nōn esset expertus.

B. 1. Vespertiliōnem dīcunt dēlapsam in terram comprehēsum fuisse ā fēle : petīvisse illum suppliciter, vītā ut sibi concēderet ; sed fēlem hōc sē facere posse negāvisse, cum esset capitālis hostis omnium avium ; tum vespertiliōnem, sē nōn avem, sed mūrem esse dixisse ; itaque vespertiliōnem dīmissum esse ; paulō post captum ab aliā fēle, similiter petīvisse ut sibi miserō vītā condōnāret ; id fēlem negāvisse sē facere posse, quod cum omnibus mūribus bellum gereret ; vespertiliōnem autem sē mūrem nēquāquam esse affirmāvisse sed volucrem. 2. Diogenēs disputāre solēbat, quantō rēgem Persārum superāret fortūnā ; sibi nihil deesse, illī nihil satis unquam fore. 3. Spērō tē mihī cito subventūrum esse.

## II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. The countryman thought his baby would be carefully guarded by his faithful dog. 2. Diogenes said he carried with him (*sēcum*) a wooden cup, with which to draw [= he might draw (Subj.)] water from the fountain. 3. The donkey affirmed that he had brought (*præbeō*) his master many advantages, but that the puppy received all the caresses. 4. The god promised the poor carpenter that he would bring back the axe, which had fallen into the deep river. When he brought up a golden [one], the honest fellow denied that it was his. 5. The fly said to the weary bull that if he weighed him down too much, he would fly away; but the bull replied that that would do him no good. 6. My friend said he did not know who had hurt him.

B. 1. The cuckoo supposed that men spoke much of his singing, but the starling told him that mention was never made of him. 2. The father said that nothing had been born that year more beautiful than the youngest of his daughters. 3. We have read that Cicero was six years (Abl.) older than Caesar. 4. Homer said that when the Greeks were returning from Troy, many perished by shipwreck. 5. Caesar said that when he had arranged everything at Rome, he would set out for Gaul. 6. Jupiter said that the frogs did not move him by their complaints, as they would-not (*nōlō*) put-up-with (*ferō*) a good king, whom he had sent. 7. The braggart boasted that no one in the Island [of] Rhodes had surpassed him in (Abl.) leaping.

☞ Reading Lesson XXII., p. 177.

---

 LI. SENTENCES OF RESULT.


(CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.)

**156.** 1. In English *in order that* denotes *Purpose*.

*Eāmus ut thēsaurum tollāmus*, *Let us go, IN ORDER that we may take up the treasure, (IN ORDER) to take up the treasure.*

*So that*, with the Indicative, denotes *Result*. Here the Latin uses *ut* with the Subjunctive.

*Simius tam bellē saltāverat, ut cūctīs prope suffrāgiīs rēx creārētur, The monkey had danced so finely THAT he was almost unanimously made king.*

 *So as to* with the Infinitive is a closer translation, but is often awkward, often impracticable.

2. The negative of clauses of *Result* is *ut nōn*, whereas sentences of *Design* or *Purpose* take *nē*.

*Nēmō tam ferus est, ut nōn mītescere possit, No one is so savage that he cannot become mild.*

3. As *that* is used in English for both *Purpose* and *Result*, and also in sentences in which the Latin would use the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*, it is important to distinguish

1. THAT Final (*Purpose*).
2. THAT Consecutive (*Consequence* or *Result*).
3. THAT Narrative (*Accusative* and *Infinitive*).

<i>Pylades</i>	<i>so</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>Orestes</i>	THAT	
<i>Pyladēs</i>	<i>adeō</i>	<i>dīligēbat</i>	<i>Orestem</i>	<i>ut</i>	(Consecutive)
		<i>he said</i>		THAT	(Narrative)
		<i>dīceret</i>			
		<i>he was</i>	<i>Orestes</i>	THAT	(Final)
		<i>sē esse</i>	<i>Orestem</i>	<i>ut</i>	
		<i>he might die for him.</i>			
		<i>prō illō</i>	<i>morerētur.</i>		

### EXERCISES.

#### I. Translate into English :

A. I. In Indiā iī, quī sapientēs nōminantur, tantam habent fortitūdinem ut et nivēs et flammās sine gemitū perferant. 2. Hostēs intrā moenia ita sē continuērunt, ut X annīs aciē pūgnārī nōn posset. 3. Zeuxis et Parrhasius, pictōrēs clārissimī,



certāmen artis inter sē instituērunt. Zeuxis ūvās pinxerat, atque sic erat imitātus nātūram ut avēs ad tabulam advolārent, putantēs vērās esse ūvās. Parrhasius prōposuit linteum pictum, tam bene factum ut Zeuxis dēceptus flāgitāret ut linteum removēret, ostenderet pictūram. 4. Leō tantum fremitum cōdēbat ut omnium oculōs in sē converteret. 5. Cum homō leōnem salutāret, ea rēs tam admirābilis populō vīsa est, ut statim maximī clāmōrēs excitārentur.

**B. 1.** Quīdam memoriā tenācissimā habēbat ut carmen ā poētā recitātum suum esse dīceret idque ut probāret prōtinus ex memoriā recitāvit, id quod ille, cūjus carmen erat, facere nōn poterat. Etiam Seneca memoriā valēbat ut duo mīlia nōminum recitāta eōdem ōrdine quō erant dictāta redderet. 2. Athēniēnsis quīdam cōspiciēns tabulam, in quā pūgna erat ita picta ut Athēniēnsēs victōrēs Spartānōs fugārent, exclāmāvit: Fortēs Athēniēnsēs! Id Lacō audiēns subjēcit: In tabulā! 3. Simulae vīdit canis domini sui percussōrēs trāseuntēs, prōcurrit furēns eōsque allatrāvit, subinde sē ad Pyrrhum convertēns ut nōn modo rēx sed omnēs, quī aderant, suspiciōnem dē iis conciperent. 4. Tanta inerat in Caniō animī tranquillitās ut cum cum centuriō ad mortem dūcere vellet, calculōs numerāret—latrunculis forte lūdēbat—et sodālī suō dīceret: Vidē nē post mortem meam mentiāris tē vīcisse.


## II. Translate into Latin:

1. **A.** The frogs demanded a king with so great (*tantus*) clamor that the god, fatigued by their prayers (*precēs*), at-length threw a log down into the marsh. 2. The goddess was so (*adeō*) angry that she turned the wicked farmers into frogs. 3. The donkey said that the puppy was a cunning flatterer, so that he was praised by [his] master. 4. The wolf was so violently tortured by a bone which had stuck in his throat, that he begged the crane that she would extract it. 5. The old man was so fatigued by the load and the walk (*iter*) that he invoked Death to deliver him from all evils. 6. The monkey scratches-up (*rādō*, 3.) the ground (*terra*) in-such-a-



hurry (*tam festinanter*) that he does not perceive the toils (*laquei*).

B. 1. So (*tam*) vigorous (*acer*) was the attack of our (men) that the enemy immediately fled. 2. The boy lied so shamelessly that he easily deceived the shepherd. 3. So great was the violence (*vis*) of the storm, that Menelaus was carried-out-of-his-course (*dēferō*) to Egypt. 4. In the swamp [of] Lerna (Gen. *ae*) there was a serpent with (*cum*) nine heads. It was so venomous [= had so great force (*vis* Acc. *vim*) of poison] that it killed people by its breath (*afflātus, ūs*). 5. Tantalus was so much loved by the gods that he was admitted to (*ad*) their feasts, and the gods sometimes (*interdum*) dined at his house (use *apud*). 6. The Scythians carried on war so vigorously that Darius scarcely (*vix*) escaped with a small (*exiguus, a, um*) part of [his] army.

 Reading Lesson XXIII. p. 177.

## LII. SUPINE STEMS.

### 157. I. *The Supine is formed from the pure stem.*

1. Vowel-stems and stems in **U** take **-tum** in the Supine :

**a mō, I love, amā-tum.**

**dēle-ō, I destroy, dēlē-tum.**

**audi-ō, I hear, audī-tum.**

**tribu-ō, I allot, tribū-tum.**

Most verbs of the Second Conjugation change their characteristic vowel before **-tum** into **i**: **mone-ō, I remind, moni-tum.** Some drop their characteristic vowel: **doce-ō, I teach, doc-tum.**

2. Consonant-stems in a **P-** or **K-**mute take **-tum** in the Supine :

**capi-ō, I take, cap-tum.**

**rēp-ō, I creep, rep-tum.**

**faci-ō, I do, fac-tum.**

**dīc-ō, I say, dic-tum.**

EXCEPTIONS.—1.) Among the **P-**stems, only **lābor, I slip, lap-sus.**

2.) Among the **K-**stems, the Supine in **-sum** occurs :

A. In verbs whose Present-stem is strengthened by *t* :

flect-ō, <i>I bend</i> , flexum.	plect-ō, <i>I plait</i> , plexum.
pect-ō, <i>I comb</i> , pexum.	nect-ō, <i>I knot</i> , bind, nexum.

B. Some, whose characteristic is preceded by a Liquid : merg-ō, *I dip*, mer-sum ; terg-ō, *I wipe*, ter-sum ; parc-ō, *I spare*, par-sum ; sparg-ō, *I sow*, scatter, spar-sum ; mulce-ō, *I stroke*, mul-sum.

REMARK.—The *K*-mutes are dropped in the Perfect and Supine between *l-s*, *l-t*, *r-s*, *r-t* : fulci-ō, *I prop*, ful(c)-si, ful(c)-tum ; torque-ō, *I twist*, tor(qu)-si, tor(qu)-tum.

3. Consonant-stems in a *T*-mute take -sum in the Supine :

ed-ō, *I eat*, ē-sum (for ed-sum) ; lūd-ō, *I play*, lū-sum ; dē-fend-ō, *I defend*, dēfēn-sum.

4. Liquid-stems have partly -tum, partly -sum. Stems in *M* and *N* take -tum ; stems in *L* and *R* take -sum :

em-ō, *I buy*, em-tum, em(p)-tum ; veni-ō, *I come*, ven-tum.  
ver-rō, *I sweep*, ver-sum ; fall-ō, *I cheat*, fal-sum ; vell-ō, *I pluck*, vul-sum.

But verbs with Perf. in *ui* have -tum : cōnsul-ō, *I consult*, cōnsul-ui, cōnsul-tum.

II. The Perfect Participle Passive is formed like the Supine.

III. The Future Active Participle is formed regularly from the Supine ; in some verbs, however, from the Present-stem.

amātūrus, *about to love*, from amātum,  
monitūrus, *about to warn*, from monitum,  
em(p)tūrus, *about to buy*, from emptum,  
auditūrus, *about to hear*, from auditum ;  
but, juvātūrus fr. juvāre (Sup. jūtum) ;  
moritūrus fr. morior, *I die* (Part. mortuus).

IV. *Rules of Syntax* : 1. The Supine in -um is used after Verbs of Motion (Going and Sending) in the same sense as *ut* Final with the Subjunctive.

Spectātum veniunt (= *ut spectent*), *They come to see the show*.

2. The Supine in -ū of certain verbs is used after certain adjectives in the sense of the English Infinitive.

**Facilius dictū quam factū, Easier to say (to be said) than to do (to be done).**

☞ The Supine in -ū does not take an object.

## EXERCISES.

### I. Translate into English :

**A.** 1. Lupus, cui os dēvorātum in gutture haeserat, vehementer cruciābātur. Grūs os extraxit spērāns illum māgnū sibi praemium dōnātūrum. Quod cum frūstrā postulāvisset, negāvit sē ingrātum iterum esse servātūram. 2. Dea interrogāvit : Quis mē ab aquā prohibīturus est ? 3. Cum ad quartam partem praedae ventum esset, māgnō cum fremitū rogāvit leō quis eam esset sūmptūrus. Nēmō respondit. 4. Cum faber mendāx auream secūrim arreptūrus esset, deus omnēs secūrēs in fluvium rējicit. 5. Gracchus, cum eī haruspex respondisset brevī tempore uxōrem moritūram esse, amārē flēvit. Haruspex : Sī scīsem (= scīvissem), inquit, tē flētūrum esse, nihil respondissem. Sī scīsem, subjēcit ille, quid ēventūrum esset, uxōrem nōn duxissem. 6. Nōlī invitās canēs vēnātum dūcere. 7. Fēlēs ā vespertiliōne rogāta, ut eī parceret, respondit id sibi perdifficile esse factū quod cum omnibus mūrībus bellum gereret.

**B.** 1. Jūppiter cum avibus rēgem datūrus esset, diem conventū cōstituit. Tum graculus suae sibi dēformitātis cōnsciū, pennās, quae aliis avibus exciderant, sustulit iisque ornātus prōcessit. Cēterae autem avēs suās quaeque pennās impudentī illi ēripuerunt atque dērisum rōstris fugāverunt. 2. Leō, cum mūrem corripuisset, primō negāvit sē impudentissimae bestiolae parsūrum, mox dīmīsit. 3. Fēlēs cum audīvisset quōmodo ā vespertiliōne esset dēcepta : Nōn semper, inquit, eōdem modō es ēvāsūrus. 4. Diogenēs negāvit ferārum laniātum sibi mortuō obfutūrum. 5. Vacca, ovis, capella

cum leōne vēnātum iērunt. 6. Ad sturnum volāvit cucūlus rogātum quid hominēs dē cantū suō jūdicārent. 7. Aegrōtus quīdam filiōs Delphōs mīsit cōnsultum quid optimum esset factū. Pŷthius respondit: Dīmitte medicōs. 8. Lusciniæ cantus jūcundus est audītū. 9. Hannibal in Āfricam reversus est patriam dēfēnsū.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The hawk had not expected (*putō*) that the vulture would swoop-down (*dēvolō*, 1.). 2. The cow, the sheep, [and] the goat having (*cum*) made a partnership with the lion, thought that they would take great booty. 3. The weary lion said to (*cum*) himself: I am-going to-take-a-long-nap (= *diū dormīre*). 4. The horse [having been] driven out of the meadow by the stag, went to seek aid from the man, thinking (*arbitrātus*) that the man would aid (*auxilior*, 1.) him. 5. The bat hoped that he would prevail on [= bend the mind of] the cat, but the cat answered: You have fooled (*lūdō*, 3.) others: me you will not fool, [for] you-must-know (*scītō*) that it is not easy to fool me.

B. 1. The cuckoo hoped that the starling would tell him (*sibi*) what people thought (*jūdicō*, 1.) of his singing. 2. The braggart boasted that he would surpass all-others (*cēteri*) in-leaping (Abl. of *saltus*, *ūs*). 3. As all the mice were crying-up (*praedicō*, 1.) the wise author of the plan, the oldest of the mice asked who was going-to-bell the cat. 4. Many persons have come together (*conveniō*) to congratulate (*grātulor*, 1. w. Dat.) the general on account of the victory. 5. Cornelia detained (*trahō*) the rich lady (*mātrōna*), who had come to see her, thinking that her boys would soon return from school. 6. It is difficult to say how-many (*quot*) soldiers fell in that battle.

## LIII. INFINITIVE.

**158.** 1. *The Latin Infinitive* is used as in English.

- 1.) As the Subject of a sentence :

**Ōrāre est labōrāre, To pray is to labor.**

The Gender is neuter :

**Facile est imperāre, It is easy to give orders ; To give orders is easy.**

- 2.) As the Predicate of a sentence :

**Labōrāre est ōrāre, To labor is to pray.**

- 3.) As the Object of a Verb :

**Cupiō ēmorī, I want to die.**

2. *The Accusative and Infinitive* is used

Like the English Objective and Infinitive.

- 1.) As the Object of a Verb of Will :

**Ad mortem tē dūcī jussī, I have ordered you to be taken to execution.**

Much more widely than in English :

- 2.) As the Object of a Verb of Saying or Thinking :

**Vespertiliō sē mūrem esse ait, The bat declares himself to be a mouse (that he is a mouse). See 155, 1.**

From these uses arises the use of the Accusative and Infinitive:

- 3.) As the Subject of a sentence :

**Rīdiculum est tē sine mē vīvere nōn posse, It is ridiculous that you should not (the thought, the statement that you are not able, your not being, for you not to) be able to live without me.**



## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Melius est minus perferre malum nē mājus veniat. 2. Rīdiculum est asinum sē esse leōnem simulāre. 3. Catō esse quam vidēri bonus mālēbat. 4. Cōnsulem fieri ūtile Mariō vidēbātur. 5. Pater filium domō discēdere vetuerat. 6. Dulce et decōrum (*honorable*) est prō patriā mori. 7. Tempus est mājōra cōnārī. 8. Lūsum it Maecēnās, dormitum ego. 9. Quod optimum factū vidēbitur, faciēs. 10. Hominēs ex vestibus et formā aestimāre est stultē facere.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. To err is human, to forgive [is] divine (*dīvīnus*). 2. All the mice wished a bell to be attached to the cat, but no one (*nullus*) was willing to undertake the job (*opera, ae*). 3. To have well performed [one's] duty is a great comfort (*sōlātium*). 4. Hannibal was recalled (*revocāre*) home to defend (Supine) his country. 5. It is better to be taught even (*et*) by an enemy, than never to learn at all (*omnīnō*). 6. It is most disgraceful (*turpis, e*) to you not to be able to preserve the liberty handed down from [your] forefathers (*mājōrēs*). 7. It is hard to say why he dealt his friend that wound.

## LIV. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**159. 1. Gerund.**—The Latin Infinitive is, as we have seen, used in the Nominative and Accusative Cases as the Subject or Object of the Verb. Other cases are supplied by the Gerund, which is a verbal noun.

NOM. Legere est difficile, *reading (to read) is difficult.*

GEN. Ars legendī, *the art of reading.*

Puer studiōsus est legendī, *the boy is fond of reading.*

DAT. Puer operam dat legendō, *the boy devotes himself to reading.*

ACC. Puer cupit legere, *the boy desires to read.*

Puer prōpēnsus est ad legendum, *the boy has a bent toward reading.*

ABL. Puer discit legendō, *the boy learns by reading.*

2. The Gerund differs from other nouns in that, like the Infinitive, it takes the same case after it as the verb of which it is a part.

*Officium p̄arendī lēgibus, The duty of obeying the laws.*

3. *Gerundive*.—When the Gerund would take an Accusative case, the Latin usually puts the object in the case of the Gerund, and makes the Gerundive (verbal adjective in -ndus) agree with it.

*Civēs aedis ōrnandae cupidī fuērunt, The citizens were desirous of adorning the temple.*

*Decemvirī lēgibus scribendis creātī sunt, Decemvirs were appointed for drawing up laws.*

*Pictor aedem ōrnandam suscēpit, The painter undertook the adorning of the temple.*

*Fēle fraudandā vespertiliō sē servābat, The bat tried to save himself by cheating the cat.*

The Gerundive is the regular construction with prepositions.

*Ad dēlendā urbem, For destroying the city.*

4. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive followed by *causā* is often used to express Purpose.

*Urbis dēlendae causā, For the purpose of destroying the city.*

5. The Accusative of the Gerundive is used after Verbs of Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, to express the Purpose or Object to be Effected.

*Rūsticus filiolum reliquit canī fidēli custōdiendum, The countryman left his infant son to a faithful dog to be guarded (to guard).*

6. The Gerundive (or verbal adjective in -ndus) may be used in the predicate. It is then always translated as a passive, and expresses *obligation, necessity*, etc. The Agent is put in the Dative.

**Deī nōbīs nōn sunt neglegendī,** *The gods are not to be neglected by us, we must not neglect the gods.*

Notice the Rule for Intransitive Verbs in the Passive, 119. 1.

**Omnibus moriendum est,** *All must die.*

**Lēgibus pārendum est,** *The laws must be obeyed.*

When the verb takes the Dative and both Agent and Object are expressed, the Ablative with *ā* or *ab* must be used to denote the Agent.

**Lēgibus pārendum est ā civibus,** *The laws should be obeyed by citizens.*

## EXERCISES.

### I. Translate into English:

1. Thrasō narrābat in Rhodō īnsulā salīendō sē vīcisse optimōs in hāc exercitātiōne artificēs. Ūnus dē circulō : Hīc est saltandum. 2. Nēmō Herculem luctandō superāre potuit. 3. Jāsō Mēdcām cōnsuluit dē pelle aureā tollendā. 4. Sī ad mē rixandī causā vēnistis, statim abeundum est. 5. Virīs fortibus omnēs dolōrēs sine gemitū sunt perferendī. 6. Cum Rōmāe sēditīō esset facta et plēbs in Sacrum Montem sēcessisset, Menēnius Agrippa, fācundus vir, missus est ad plēbem reconciliandam. Id fābulā narrandā cōnātus est perficere. 7. Ūnus ē mūrībus dixit : Tintinnābulum fēlī est annectendum. Statim auctōrem tintinnābulī annectendī ōrāvērunt ut ipse tintinnābulum annecteret. 8. Iī reprehendendī sunt, quī hominēs ex formā aestimant. 9. Amīcī vītandī causā rūs profūgī. 10. Amīcōs vītandī causā rūs profūgit. 11. Māter filiolum validō agricolae trāns fluvium trānsportandum dedit. 12. Puerī improbī miseram rānam anguī dēvorandam prōjēcērunt. 13. Nox finem fēcit pugnantī.

### II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. The mice held-a-consultation (*cōnsultō*, 1.) about belling the cat. 2. As Hercules could not overtake (*cōnsequor*, 3.) the doe (*cerva*) by running, he pierced her with an

arrow. 3. The father devoted-himself (*operam dare*) a-long-time to reconcile his sons. It is [a] wretched [thing,] he said, for brothers to wrangle (*rixor*, 1.) with one another (*inter sē*). 4. Everything must be tried (*experior*, 4.) for the sake (*causā*) of freeing [our] country. 5. Donkeys are very-useful for (*ad*) bearing burdens. 6. When Iphigenia heard that (Inf.) she had to [= must] die, she gave herself to be sacrificed. 7. To girls nothing seems better than the art of dancing. 8. We must all yield to necessity.

**B.** 1. We must not let-slip (*dimitto*, 3.) the chance to fight [= of fighting]. 2. Brave men must not quail-before [= yield to] an enemy. 3. Let us take-up (*capere*) arms for the purpose of regaining (*recuperare*) liberty. 4. They set out to (*ad*) storm the city. 5. The lion said that he took the first part of the booty, because (*quia*) he was (**155**, 2.) the lion ; that the second part was to be awarded to him because he excelled in (Abl.) bravery ; that the third part was due (Pass. of *dēbeō*) to him because he was stronger than the other (*ceteri*) animals ; that the fourth was left to be divided (*partior*, 4.) among (*inter*) his whelps (*catulus*).

☞ For Reading Lesson XXV., p. 178.

---

## LV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**160.** 1. *Nominative Absolute.* In English there is a construction commonly called the Nominative Absolute, in which the (so-called) Nominative with the participle takes the place of a clause with different subject or object from the subject or object of the finite verb of the sentence.

*The father being dead, the eldest son became the head of the family.*


*My brother having gone into the country, I am left quite alone.*

*This said, he departed.*

*The bread being exhausted, they lived on meat.*



2. *Ablative Absolute.* This relation is represented in Latin by the Ablative Absolute, which consists of a substantive in the Ablative case with a predicate in the form either of a participle or of an adjective or substantive. As in English, the subject must be different from the subject or object of the finite verb.

 The Ablative Absolute is much more common in Latin than the corresponding construction in English, and must be translated to suit the context. Samples are given below.

**Xerxe rēgnante** (= cum Xerxēs rēgnāret), *Xerxes reigning.* When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.

**Xerxe victō** (= cum Xerxēs victus esset), *Xerxes being, having been, defeated.* When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.

**Xerxe rēge** (= cum Xerxēs rēx esset), *Xerxes [being] king.* When Xerxes was king.

**Patre vivō**, WHILE, BECAUSE, THOUGH, IF *father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).*

**Urbe expūgnātā imperātor rediit :**

PASSIVE FORM : *The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.*

ACTIVE FORM : *Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.*

ABSTRACT FORM : *After the taking of the city. After taking the city.*

3. It is often convenient, though by no means exact, to translate the Ablative Absolute as a Nominative and finite verb followed by *and, but,* or other conjunction :

**Zeuxis flāgitāvit ut, remōtō linteō, pictūram ostenderet.** *Zeuxis demanded that he should remove the linen cloth AND show the painting.*

### EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Cum pater deōrum hominumque māgnū truncū ē caelō in palūdem dējēcisset, subitō mōtū aquārum sonitūque perterritae rānae sē mergunt et latent in limō. Forte ūna



prōfert ē stāgnō caput et, explōrātō rēge, cūctās ēvocat. Illae, timōre positō, adnatant ; mōx, crēscēte animō, petulāns turba in truncum insilit. Aliō rēge postulātō, Jūppiter mīsīt cicōniam. Māgnō rānārum numerō jugulātō, reliquae ōrant ut hāc calamitāte liberentur. 2. Auctor cōsiliī : Tinnābulō annexō, inquit, statim audiēmus cum veniet fēlēs facileque effugiēmus. 3. Ursō accēdente viātor humī sē prōsternit. 4. Senex quīdam ligna in silvā ceciderat et, fasce in umerōs sublātō, domum redīre coepit. Cum fatigātus esset et onere et itinere, dēpositis lignīs, clārā vōce invocāvit Mortem. Morte interrogante quid vellet, senex perterritus : Prō ! hunc līgnōrum fascem umerīs meis impōne. 5. Jāsonē duce, Argonautae Colchōs pervēnērunt.

B. Nōdō discissō pater singulās puerīs virgās dedit, quās nullō negōtiō frēgērunt. Quō factō senex eōs admonuit ut dissēnsiōne positā concordēs essent. 2. Rūsticus custōde filiī interfectō cūnās restituit. Restitūtis cūnis super anguem occisum repperit puerum vīvum et incolumem. 3. Titō imperātōre, Pompējī et Herculāneum urbēs obrutae sunt. 4. Pŷthius Lacedaemoniīs respondit, duce occisō, eōs superiōrēs fore. 5. Cēterīs in campō sē exercentibus, Lepidus in herbā recumbēns : Utinam hōc esset, inquit, labōrāre. 6. Zeuxis et Parrhasius, pictōrēs clārissimī, certāmen artis inter sē instituērunt. Zeuxis ūvās pinxerat atque sic erat imitātus nātūram, ut avēs ad tabulam advolārent quasi vērae essent ūvae. Parrhasius prōposuit linteum pictum. Zeuxis dēceptus flāgitāvit ut, remōto linteō, pictūram ostenderet. Intellēctō errōre : Vīcistī, inquit, Parrhasī ! Nam ego avēs fefellī, tū artificem.

## II. Translate into Latin :

A. The cow, the sheep [and] the goat had made a partnership with the lion. When they had caught a very-large stag, the lion made four parts. After he had made the four parts, he gave the others (*cēterī*) nothing. 2. When the donkey had been violently beaten, the puppy begged the master to spare the poor [creature]. 3. Seeing (Perf.) through (*perspicio*, 3.)

the hollow (*vānus*) character (*ingenium*) of the monkey, the fox determined to deceive the new king. When the monkey was caught in the (Abl.) toils, the fox calling all the beasts together showed [them] how foolish a creature (*bestiola*) they had made king. 4. Augustus was born in the consulship (*cōnsul*) of Cicero and Antonius.

**B.** 1. Upon the death (*moriōr*, 3.) of the mother, the father married another wife. At the instance (*suādeō*, 2.) of the hard-hearted (*improbū*) stepmother (*noverca*), he was about-to-sacrifice his children. 2. If you cut off (*caedō*, 3.) one head, three will grow (*crēscō*, 3.). 3. Hercules slew (*interimō*, 3.) the dragon and carried off the golden apples. 4. Diogenes lighted (*accendō*, 3.) a lantern in broad-day and walked [about] on the market-place. When his friends asked what he was looking-for (*quaerō*) he answered: I am looking-for a man (*homō*). 5. At the request (*rogō*) of the judge, the orator began to tell a charming story. 6. Hannibal set-out for Italy in the consulship of Scipio and Sempronius.

## READING LESSONS.

I.—Asinus pelle leōnis indūsus.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fugitīvus asinus reperit in silvā pellem leōnis. Induit pellem et terrēbat bestiās et hominēs, tanquam leō esset.<sup>2</sup> Rūsticī in vicōs suōs sē condunt; lupī, ursī, cervī, bovēs, equī, ovēs, omnēs bestiae fugā salūtem quacrunt. Postquam hōc modō diū per agrōs saeviit,<sup>3</sup> vēnit<sup>4</sup> tandem dominus. Tum ille horrendum in modum<sup>5</sup> rudere coepit,<sup>6</sup> ut erum quoque falleret.<sup>7</sup> Sed forte ūna auricula ēminēbat. Hanc<sup>8</sup> erus comprehendēs:<sup>9</sup> Aliōs, inquit, fallās,<sup>10</sup> mē nōn fallēs.<sup>11</sup> Nōvī<sup>12</sup> tē, mī asine. Ita vehementer verberātum<sup>13</sup> asinum domum<sup>14</sup> pellit.

<sup>1</sup> indūsus: Pf. Pass. Part. of induō. <sup>2</sup> tanquam esset: as if he were. Comp. 95. 2. **Esset**: 3. S. Imperf. Subj. of sum. <sup>3</sup> saeviit = saevivit: 3. S. Pf. Ind. Act. of saevio. <sup>4</sup> vēnit: 3. S. Pf. Ind. Act. of vēniō. <sup>5</sup> in modum: after a fashion. <sup>6</sup> coepit: 3. S. Perf. Ind. Act. of the Defective Verb coepi. <sup>7</sup> ut falleret: to deceive. See 96. 1. **Falleret**: 3. S. Impf. Subj. Act. of fallō. <sup>8</sup> Hanc: Acc. S. Fem. of hīc. <sup>9</sup> comprehendēs: Pres. Act. Part. of comprehendō. <sup>10</sup> fallās: 2. P. Pres. Subj. Act. of fallō, you may deceive, a kind of Imperative Subj. (concessive). See 92. 1. <sup>11</sup> fallēs: 2. S. Fut. Ind. Act. of fallō. <sup>12</sup> Nōvī: 1. Pf. Ind. Act. of nōscō, used as a Present, I know. <sup>13</sup> verberātum: Pf. Part. Pass. of verberō. The Latin Pf. Part. Pass. is often translated into English by some active turn. So verberātum - pellit, he drives him beaten, he beats AND drives him. <sup>14</sup> domum, home, an Accus. used as an Adverb.

II.—Quod<sup>1</sup> catulum, nōn decet asinum.

Dominus asinī habēbat etiam catulum. Is ā dominō saepe laudābātur et permulcēbātur,<sup>2</sup> frustaque semper ēgregia eī<sup>3</sup> dabantur. Hōc<sup>4</sup> cum invidiā vidēbat asinus. Cōgitābat sēcum:<sup>5</sup> Cūr canis ita amātur ā dominō? Cūr ego male tractor? Ille inūtilis est; ego maxima semper commoda dominō comparāvī. At canis callidus est adūlātor; ā mē dominus nunquam blanditiās accēpit.<sup>6</sup> Etiam ego amābor, sī idem<sup>7</sup> faciam,<sup>8</sup> quod ille facere solet. Forte hōc<sup>9</sup> tempore dominus intrat in stabulum. Statim asinus accurrit, rudēs<sup>10</sup> pedēs pōnit in dominī umerīs et faciem lātā suā linguā lambere incipit. Exterritus<sup>11</sup> dominus et irātus vocat famulōs, quī<sup>12</sup>

fustibus asinum stultum miserē mulcant. Mulcātus stultitiam suam dēplōrāvit.

<sup>1</sup> Quod = id quod (decet), *That which is, What is, becoming.* See 127. <sup>2</sup> per-  
mulcēbātur : 3. S. Impf. Ind. Pass. of permulceō. <sup>3</sup> ei : Dat. S. Masc. of is.  
<sup>4</sup> hōc : Acc. S. Neut. of hīc. <sup>5</sup> sēcum : cum, *with*, is put after mē, tē, sē. <sup>6</sup> accēpit :  
3. S. Perf. Ind. Act. of accipiō. <sup>7</sup> idem : Acc. S. Neut. of idem. <sup>8</sup> faciam : 1. S. Fut.  
Ind. Act. of faciō. <sup>9</sup> hōc : Abl. S. Neut. of hīc. <sup>10</sup> rudēns : Pres. Part. Act. of rudō.  
<sup>11</sup> exterritus : Pf. Part. Pass. of exterreō. <sup>12</sup> qui : N. Plur. Masc. of qui, 126.

### III.—Cervus.

Cervus contemplābātur <sup>1</sup> imāginem suam in rīvulō. Laudā-  
bat cornua rāmōsa, sed crūrum nimiam gracilitātem vituperā-  
bat. Subitō prope canēs tollunt latrātum. Trepidat cervus  
et cito fugit. Fugientī <sup>2</sup> instant canēs ; sed facile eum crūra  
gracilia auferunt. Currit in silvam. ✓ At nunc rāmōsa cornua  
cervum ubīque impediunt, moxque canēs dentibus eum dilace-  
rant. Tum moribundus errōrem suum intellexit. <sup>3</sup> Vitupe-  
rāvī, inquit, crūra vėlōcia ; cornua, quae mē perdidērunt,  
laudāvī.

<sup>1</sup> contemplābātur : 3. S. Impf. Ind. of the Deponent Verb (133) contemplor.  
<sup>2</sup> fugientī : Dat. S. Pres. Part. Act. of fugiō. Verbs compounded with the preposition  
in often take the Dative. <sup>3</sup> intellexit : 3. S. Perf. Ind. Act. of intellegō.

### IV.—Senex et mors.

Senex quīdam līgna in silvā ceciderat <sup>1</sup> et, fascē in umerōs  
sublātō, <sup>2</sup> domum <sup>3</sup> redīre <sup>4</sup> coepit. Cum fatīgātus esset et onere  
et itinere, dēposuit <sup>5</sup> līgna et, senectūtis et inopiae miserīā,  
sēcum reputāns, clārā vōce invocāvit Mortem, ut sē <sup>6</sup> omnibus  
malīs liberāret. ✓ Mox adest Mors et interrogat, quid vellet. <sup>7</sup>  
Tum senex perterritus ✓ Prō ! hunc <sup>8</sup> līgnōrum fascem, quaesō,  
umerīs meis <sup>9</sup> impōnās. <sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ceciderat : 3. S. Plupf. Ind. Act. of caedō. <sup>2</sup> fascē—sublātō : So-called Ablative  
Absolute ; *the fagot being raised, having raised the fagot, raised the fagot* AND . . . See  
160., 2, and I. 13. sublātō : Pf. Part. Pass. of tollō. <sup>3</sup> domum : See I. 14. <sup>4</sup> red-  
ire : Pres. Inf. Act. of redeō. <sup>5</sup> dēposuit : 3. S. Pf. Ind. Act. of dēpōnō. <sup>6</sup> sē : *him*,  
referring to senex. Comp. 123. <sup>7</sup> quid vellet : *what he wanted.* Dependent ques-  
tions (132) are put in the Subj. vellet : 3. S. Impf. Subj. of volō. <sup>8</sup> hunc : Acc.  
S. Masc. of hīc. <sup>9</sup> umerīs meis : Dative, depends on fascem—impōnās. Comp. III.  
2. <sup>10</sup> impōnās : 2. S. Pres. Subj. Act. of impōnō. A prayerful wish is put in the Subj.  
See 92, 3.



## V.—Vulpēs ōrātor pācis.

Blandō vultū ad stabulum, in cūjus<sup>1</sup> tectō cum multīs gallīnīs sedēbat gallus, accessit<sup>2</sup> vulpēs. Salvēte, inquit, et laetum, quem vōbīs afferō, accipite nūntium. Omnēs, quāe inter animālia erant, inimicitiae extinctae<sup>3</sup> sunt, pāx est facta. Ambulant cum leōnibus cervī, cum lupīs ovēs, cum fēlibus mūrēs; dēscendite igitur, ut etiā nōs amīcitiā sempiternā jungāmus.<sup>4</sup> Bene monēs, respondit<sup>5</sup> gallus, dēscendēmus,<sup>6</sup> et canis, quem accurrentem<sup>7</sup> videō, testis estō.—Accurrit canis? subjicit vulpēs. Fierī potest,<sup>8</sup> ut pāx canibus nōndum nūntiāta sit.<sup>9</sup> Valēte.

<sup>1</sup> cūjus: Gen. S. Neut. of qui. <sup>2</sup> accessit: 3. S. Pf. Ind. Act. of accēdō. <sup>3</sup> extinctae: Pf. Part. Pass. of exstinguō. <sup>4</sup> jungāmus: 1. Pl. Pres. Subj. Act. of jungō. Ut—jungāmus: to join. form (96). <sup>5</sup> respondit: 3. S. Pf. Ind. Act. of respondeō. <sup>6</sup> descendēmus: 1. Pl. Fut. Ind. Act. of dēscendō. <sup>7</sup> accurrentem: Pres. Part. Act. of accurrō. <sup>8</sup> fierī potest, ut, etc.: (it) may be (that) the peace has not been announced yet. Fierī: Pres. Inf. of fiō. potest: 3. S. Pres. Ind. of possum. <sup>9</sup> sit: See 156.

## VI.—Diogenēs.—Croesus et Solō.

1. Diogenēs Cynicus<sup>1</sup> ubique sēcum ferre<sup>2</sup> solēbat pōculum lignēum, quō<sup>3</sup> aquam sibī ē fonte haurīret.<sup>4</sup> Sed cum aliquando vidēret puerum manibus aquam haurientem, pōculum abjēcit. Apage, inquit; quid<sup>5</sup> mihi tē opus est? Carēre pōculō<sup>6</sup> possum; manūs idem<sup>7</sup> mihi officium praestābunt.

2. Cum in rēgālī soliō sedēret Croesus, pretiōsissimīs vestibus indūtus, Solōnem interrogāvit, num quid<sup>1</sup> unquam vidisset<sup>2</sup> pulchrius? Gallōs, inquit ille, et phāsiānōs et pāvōnēs vidī, nātūrālī enim nec<sup>3</sup> imitābilī colōre et pulchritūdine fulgent.

1. <sup>1</sup> Cynicus: Cynic, dog-philosopher, from the Greek word for dog. The Cynics were a snappish and snarling sect. <sup>2</sup> ferre: Pres. Inf. Act. of ferō. <sup>3</sup> quō: Abl. of qui = ut eō, wherewith to. . . <sup>4</sup> haurīret: 3. S. Impf. Subj. Act. of hauriō. <sup>5</sup> quid mihi. what need have I of thee? Opus takes the Dative of the Person Who Needs and the Abl. of That Which is Needed. <sup>6</sup> pōculō: Abl., dependent on carēre. Verbs signifying Want take the Ablative. <sup>7</sup> idem: Acc. S. Neut. of idem.

2. <sup>1</sup> num quid: whether anything. <sup>2</sup> vidisset: 3. S. Plupf. Subj. Act. of videō. On the Mood see 132, and comp. IV. 7. <sup>3</sup> nec: nor, and not.

VII.—Minus perferte,<sup>1</sup> mājus nē veniat<sup>2</sup> malum.

Rānae ōlim clāmōre māgnō rēgem petiērunt<sup>3</sup> ā Jove. Ridet



Pater deōrum atque magnum truncum ē caelō in palūdem dē-  
jicit. Subitō mōtū aquārum sonōque perterritae<sup>4</sup> sē mergunt  
et latent in līmō. Forte ūna prōfert<sup>5</sup> ē stagnō caput et, explō-  
rātō rēge,<sup>6</sup> cūctās ēvocat. Illae, timōre positō,<sup>7</sup> adnatant ;  
mox petulāns turba in truncum īnsilit. Alium rēgem postu-  
lant, quoniam inūtilis esset<sup>8</sup> quī fuerat datus. Tum Jūppiter  
mīsīt<sup>9</sup> cicōniam. Ea<sup>10</sup> ūnō diē magnum rānārum numerum  
dīlacerat, jugulat, vīvās aliās dēvorat. Reliquae mersae<sup>11</sup> lū-  
gent, flent, ōrant, ut ab hāc<sup>12</sup> calamitāte liberentur. Sed  
deum nōn movent querēlae ac lacrimae. Benignum, inquit,  
et placidum rēgem nōn tulistis,<sup>13</sup> jam ferum et barbarum  
fertōte !<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> perferte: 2. Pl. I. Imper. of *perferō*. <sup>2</sup> veniat: 3. S. Pres. Subj. Act. of *veniō*.  
See 96. <sup>3</sup> petiērunt: 3. Pl. Pf. Ind. Act. of *petō*. <sup>4</sup> perterritae: Pf. Part. Pass. of  
*perterreo*. <sup>5</sup> prōfert: 3. S. Pres. Ind. Act. of *prōferō*. <sup>6</sup> explōrātō rēge: Abl. Ab-  
sol. *The king having been examined (reconnitred), after examining the king.* See 160,  
2, and IV. 2. In like manner, *timōre positō*, *their fear being laid aside, dismissed  
their fear* AND. . <sup>7</sup> Positō: Pf. Part. Pass. of *pōnō*. <sup>8</sup> esset: The Subjunctive shows  
that this is what the frogs said (Indirect Discourse). See 155, 2. <sup>9</sup> mīsīt: 3. S. Pf. Ind.  
Act. of *mittō*. <sup>10</sup> Ea: Nom. S. Fem. of *is*. <sup>11</sup> mersae: Perf. Part. Pass. of *mergō*.  
<sup>12</sup> hāc: Abl. S. Fem. of *hic*. <sup>13</sup> tulistis: 2. Pl. Pf. Ind. Act. of *ferō*. <sup>14</sup> fertōte: 2.  
Pl. 2. Imper. Act. of *ferō*.

#### VIII.—Parvae rēs concordiā crēscunt.

Inter rūsticī cūjusdam<sup>1</sup> filiōs grave discidium ortum<sup>2</sup> erat.  
Diū frūstrā operam dederat pater, ut concordiam reconciliāret.  
Tandem : Virgulās, inquit, filiī, mihī afferte.<sup>3</sup> Allātās<sup>4</sup> virgu-  
lās omnēs in ūnum fasciculum colligāvit, eumque<sup>5</sup> cōnstric-  
tum<sup>6</sup> filiīs obtulit,<sup>7</sup> ut frangerent. Illī autem, quanquam vim  
omnem adhibēbant, frūstrā labōrābant nec quidquam<sup>8</sup> prōfēcē-  
runt. Deinde pater nōdum discidit<sup>9</sup> singulāsque illīs virgulās  
dedit, quās nullō negōtiō cōnfrēgērunt.<sup>10</sup> Quō factō<sup>11</sup> senex  
eōs<sup>12</sup> sic allocūtus est : <sup>13</sup> Haec rēs, filiī, vōbīs exemplō<sup>14</sup> sit.<sup>15</sup>  
Tūtī eritis ab inimicōrum injūriīs, quamdiū inter vōs<sup>16</sup> amā-  
bitis et concordēs eritis ; simul atque vērō<sup>17</sup> facta<sup>18</sup> erit dissēn-  
siō atque discordia, inimicī in vōs irrumpent.

<sup>1</sup> cūjusdam: Gen. of *quidam*. <sup>2</sup> ortum erat: 3. S. Plupf. of the Deponent Verb  
*orior*. <sup>3</sup> afferte: 2. Pl. I. Imper. Act. of *afferō* (*adferō*). <sup>4</sup> Allātās: Pf. Part. Pass.  
of *afferō*. <sup>5</sup> eumque: *and it*. *eum*: Acc. S. Masc. of *is*. <sup>6</sup> cōnstrictum: Pf. Part.

Pass. of **cōnstringō**. <sup>7</sup> **obtulit**: 3. S. Pf. Ind. Act. of **offerō**. <sup>8</sup> **quidquam**: Acc. S. Neut. of **quisquam**, *any thing*. <sup>9</sup> **discidit**: 3. S. Pf. Ind. Act. of **discindō**. <sup>10</sup> **cōnfrēgerunt**: 3. Pl. Pf. Ind. Act. of **cōnfringō**. <sup>11</sup> **Quō factō**: *which being done, after doing this*. See VII. 6. **factō**: Pf. Part. of **fiō**. <sup>12</sup> **eōs** Acc. Pl. Masc. of **is**. <sup>13</sup> **allocūtus est**: 3. S. Pf. Ind. of Deponent Verb **alloquor**. <sup>14</sup> **exemplō**: Dat. of Object For Which, *for an example, an example*. <sup>15</sup> **sit**: Imper. Subj. See 92, 1. <sup>16</sup> **inter vōs**: *among yourselves = one another*. <sup>17</sup> **vērō**: *In fact, but*; postpositive, that is, put after the beginning of the sentence. <sup>18</sup> **facta**: Perf. Part. of **fiō**, used as the Pass. of **faciō**.

### IX.—Vespertiliō.

Vespertiliō dēlapsus<sup>1</sup> in terram comprehēsus<sup>2</sup> fuit ā fēle. Petiit<sup>3</sup> ille suppliciter, vītam ut sibi concēderet. Sed fēlēs hōc sēfacere posse<sup>4</sup> negābat, cum esset capitālis hostis omnium avium. Tum vespertiliō, sē nōn avem, sed mūrem esse, dixit.<sup>5</sup> Itaque dīmissus<sup>6</sup> est. Paulō post captus<sup>7</sup> ab aliā fēle, similiter petiit, ut sibi miserō vītam condōnāret. Id<sup>8</sup> fēlēs sibi factū<sup>9</sup> perdifficile esse ait, quae cum omnibus mūribus bellum gereret.<sup>10</sup> Vespertiliō autem, sē mūrem nēquāquam esse, affirmāvit, sed volucrem. Sic iterum perīculum ēvāsit<sup>11</sup> et nōmine mūtātō<sup>12</sup> bis servātus est.

<sup>1</sup> **dēlapsus**: Pf. Part. of the Deponent Verb **dēlābor**. <sup>2</sup> **comprehēsus**: Pf. Part. Pass. of **comprehendō**. <sup>3</sup> **petiit**: 3. S. Pf. Act. of **petō**. <sup>4</sup> **posse negābat**: *denicā himself to be able = said that he could not*. **posse**, Pres. Inf. of **possum**. <sup>5</sup> **dixit**: 3. S. Pf. Act. of **dicō**. <sup>6</sup> **dīmissus**: Pf. Part. Pass. of **dīmittō**. <sup>7</sup> **captus**: Pf. Part. Pass. of **capīō**. <sup>8</sup> **id**: Acc. S. Neut. of **is**. <sup>9</sup> **factū**: Supine in -ū fr. **faciō**: **perdifficile—factū**: *very difficult in the doing, to do*. See 157, IV. 2. <sup>10</sup> **quae—gereret**: *which was carrying on, seeing that she was carrying on*, etc. When the Relative implies a reason it commonly takes the Subjunctive, which, however, would be required here at any rate. See 154, 2. <sup>11</sup> **ēvāsit**: 3. S. Pf. Act. of **ēvādō**. <sup>12</sup> **nōmine mūtātō**: *name being changed, by change of name*. See 160, 2, and VII. 6.

### X.—Duōbus litigantibus,<sup>1</sup> tertius gaudet.

Duo viātōrēs asinum in sōlitūdine errantem cōnspicātī sunt.<sup>2</sup> Accurrunt laetī et capiunt. Mox autem oritur<sup>3</sup> contentiō, uter eum domum abdūceret.<sup>4</sup> Uterque asinum sibi vindicāvit, quia eum prior cōnspexisset.<sup>5</sup> Dum illi dē eā rē ācritur rixantur,<sup>6</sup> asinus aufūgit ac neuter lucrum fēcit.

<sup>1</sup> **Duōbus litigantibus**: Abl. Absol. *When two are at loggerheads*. See 160, 2. <sup>2</sup> **cōnspicātī sunt**: 3. Pl. Pf. of the Deponent Verb, **cōnspicor**. <sup>3</sup> **oritur**: 3. S. Pres. of the Deponent Verb **orior**. <sup>4</sup> **uter abdūceret**: *which of the two should lead home?* Questions expecting an Imperative answer are put in the Subjunctive. The Subjunctive would be used at any rate on account of 135. <sup>5</sup> **cōnspexisset**: The Subjunctive in a Relative (causal) clause in Indirect Discourse. See 155, 2, and c. VII. 7. <sup>6</sup> **rixantur**: 3. Pl. Pres. Ind. of the Deponent Verb **rixor**.

## XI.—Animi tranquillitās.

Cum Canius Jūlus cum imperātore Gaiō Caligulā diū fuisset altercātus, discēdentī<sup>1</sup> tyrannus ille dixit: Nē<sup>2</sup> forte ineptā spē tibi blandiāris, dūcī ad mortem tē jussī. Grātiās, inquit, agō, optime princeps. Decem mediōs usque ad supplicium diēs sine ullā sollicitūdine exēgit. Lūdēbat latrunculis, cum centuriō, plūrēs capite damnātōs dūcēns, illum quoque citāvit. Vocātus numerāvit calculōs, et sodālī suō: Vidē,<sup>3</sup> inquit, nē post mortem meam mentiāris,<sup>4</sup> tē vīcisse.<sup>5</sup> Tum annuēns centuriōnī: Testis, inquit, eris, ūnō<sup>6</sup> mē antecēdere. Quanta animi tranquillitās!

<sup>1</sup> discēdentī: Dat. S. Pres. Participle of discēdō. <sup>2</sup> Nē—blandiāris: *To keep you from flattering yourself* (let me tell you that) *I have ordered*, etc. blandiāris: 2. S. Pres. Subj. of blandior. <sup>3</sup> vidē nē: *Beware lest, be sure not to*. <sup>4</sup> mentiāris: 2. S. Pres. Subj. of mentior. <sup>5</sup> tē vīcisse: *that you beat*. See 155, 1. <sup>6</sup> ūnō mē antecēdere: *that I am one ahead*. Ūnō: Abl. of Measure of Difference, 143, III.

## XII.—Contentiō de asinī umbrā.

Dēmostenēs, causam agēns, cum jūdicēs parum attentōs vidēret: Paulisper, inquit, aurēs mihi praebēte; rem vōbīs novam et jūcundam narrābō. Cum aurēs arrexissent: Juvenis, inquit, asinum conduxerat, quō<sup>1</sup> Athēnīs<sup>2</sup> Megaram<sup>3</sup> veherētur. In itinere cum sōl ūreret neque esset umbrāculum, dēposuit clitellās et sub asinō cōnsēdit, ut ējus umbrā tegetetur. Id vērō agāsō vetābat, clāmāns, asinum locātum esse, nōn umbram asinī. Alter contrā disputābat. Tandem in jūs ambulat.—Omnēs diligenter auscultant. Sed Dēmostenēs, ea locūtus, abiit.<sup>4</sup> Tum revocātus ā jūdicibus et rogātus, ut reliquam fābulam ēnarraret: Quid? inquit, dē asinī umbrā libet audire, causam hominis dē vitā periclitantis<sup>5</sup> nōn audiētis?<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> quō veherētur: *by which to be borne, to ride*. Comp. VI. 1. 3. <sup>2</sup> Athēnīs: The City From Which is put in the Ablative. <sup>3</sup> Megaram: The City To Which is put in the Accusative. <sup>4</sup> abiit: 3. S. Pf. Ind. of abeō. <sup>5</sup> periclitantis: Pres. Part. of the Dependent Verb periclitator. <sup>6</sup> audiētis: 2. Pl. Fut. Ind. Act. of audiō.

XIII.—Dictum citius<sup>1</sup> quam factum.

Mūrēs aliquando cōnsultābant, quōmodo sē ā fēle tuērī<sup>2</sup> pos-

sent.<sup>3</sup> Multa prōpōnēbantur ā singulīs mūrībus, sed nihil placēbat. Postrēmō ūnus dixit: Tintinnābulum fēlī<sup>4</sup> annectendum est; tum statim audiēmus, cum veniet, facileque effugiēmus. Omnēs mūrēs lactī praedicant prūdentem cōnsiliū auctōrem. Jam tū, inquit, annecte tintinnābulum. Ego vērō, respondet ille, cōnsilium dedī, alius operam sūmat.<sup>5</sup> Irritum cōnsilium fuit, quoniam, quī fēlī annecteret<sup>6</sup> tintinnābulum, nōn reperiēbātur.

<sup>1</sup> *citius*: Comparative of *cito*, *quickly, soon*. <sup>2</sup> *tuērī*: Pres. Inf. of the Deponent Verb *tueor*. <sup>3</sup> *possent*: 3. Pl. Impf. Subj. of *possum*. For the Subj. see 132, and IV. 7. <sup>4</sup> *fēlī*: Depends on *annectendum*. Gerundive of *annectō*, 159, 6. Many verbs compounded with *ad* take the Dative. <sup>5</sup> *sūmat*: Imperative Subj. (See 92, 1.) <sup>6</sup> *quī annecteret*; *who should attach, to attach*; *quī* = *ut*. See VI. 1. 3.

#### XIV.—Biās.

1. Biās nāvīgābat aliquando cum hominibus improbīs. Cum adversā tempestāte in altō marī jactārentur fluctibusque nāvis quaterētur, illi invocāvērunt deōs. Tum Biās: Silēte, inquit, nē vōs in altō illī nāvīgāre sentiant.

2. Biantis, sapientis illiūs, patriam Priēnēn cēperat hostis. Cēterī fugientēs multa dē suis rēbus asportābant. At ille, cum esset admonitus, ut idē faceret: Ego vērō,<sup>1</sup> inquit, faciō; nam omnia mea mēcum portō.

2. <sup>1</sup> *vērō*: See VIII. 17.

XV.—Quae sit grātia eōrum, quī aliud clausum in pectore, aliud in linguā prōmptum habent.

Cum vēnātōrem instantem fugeret lupus et pāstor vīdisset quīdam, quā parte<sup>1</sup> fugeret et quō sē locō<sup>2</sup> absconderet, ille vehementer metuēns: Ōrō tē, inquit, bubulce, nē mē prōdās innocentem. Nihil unquam malī<sup>3</sup> tibi<sup>3</sup> fēcī. Et pāstor: Nōlī,<sup>4</sup> inquit, timēre; alteram vēnātōrī mōnstrābō partem.—Mox vēnātōr cum advolāvisset: Vīdistīne<sup>5</sup> hūc, inquit, pāstor, lupum venientem? Quā parte fūgit? Huīc pāstor vōce maximā: Vēnit ille quidem, sed laevā fūgit. At simul oculīs clam dextram partem dēsīgnat. Vēnātōr nōn intellexit nūtum et festīnāns abiit.<sup>6</sup> Tum lupum pāstor interrogat: Quam tu



mihī habēbis grātiam, quod<sup>1</sup> tē cēlāvī? Tum ille, Maximās, inquit, linguae tuae grātiās agō; at oculīs tuīs fallācibus, sēcum murmurāns subjēcit, tālem grātiam referam, ut ex minōre in diēs ovium numerō cōgnōscās,<sup>2</sup> quam memor sim meritī tuī.

<sup>1</sup> quā parte: *by what part = in what direction.* <sup>2</sup> quō locō: locō is often used without in. <sup>3</sup> mali: *of bad*, whereas we usually say *bad*. <sup>4</sup> nōlī timēre: *Do not fear.* See 137, 5. <sup>5</sup> -ne: Asks a question. See 130. <sup>6</sup> abiit: 3. S. Pf. Ind. Act. of *abeō*. <sup>7</sup> quod: *that, (because)*, the regular construction after Verbs of Thanking (grateful emotion). <sup>8</sup> ut—cōgnōscās: *That you will know.* A sentence of Result (consecutive sentence). See 156.

XVI.—Paris.

Cum nuptiae Pēleī et Thetidis celebrārentur, omnēs deī et deae aderant, sōla Eris invītāta nōn erat. Irāta<sup>1</sup> discordiam excitāre cōstituit. Itaque pōmum aureum inter convīvās jēcit in quō inscriptum erat: Pulcherrimae! Jūnō et Minerva et Venus pōmum sibī vindicant; vehemēns rixa oritur. Postrēmō Mercurius trēs illās deās duxit in montem Idam, quī ad Trōjam situs erat. Paridī, Priamī filiō, quī ibī ovēs pascēbat, jūdicium commissum est. Jūnō eī pollicita est rēgnum Asiae et dīvitias, Minerva sapientiam et bellī glōriam, Venus formōsissimam omnium mulierum conjugem.<sup>2</sup> Paris Venerem pulcherrimam esse jūdicāvit eīque pōmum porrexit. Ideō Jūnō et Minerva Paridī omnibusque Trōjānīs inimīcae fuērunt. Paris autem cōnsiliō et auxiliō Veneris Lacedaemonem<sup>3</sup> nāvīgāvit et Helenam, Menelāi hospitis uxōrem, Trōjam<sup>3</sup> abduxit.

<sup>1</sup> Irāta: *angry = in her anger.* <sup>2</sup> conjugem: *as [his] wife, to wife.* <sup>3</sup> Lacedaemonem—Trōjam: Names of Cities are put in the Accusative of the Place Whither. See 153, II. 1., and XII. 3.

XVII.—Menēniī Agrippae fābula.

Cum Rōmae<sup>1</sup> sēditiō esset facta et plēbs in Sacrum Montem sēcessisset, Menēnius Agrippa, fācundus vir, missus est ad plēbem reconciliandam.<sup>2</sup> Is, intrōmissus in castra, nihil aliud quam<sup>3</sup> hōc narrāvit: Tempore, quō singulīs hominis membrīs suum cuique<sup>4</sup> cōnsilium, suus sermō erat, reliquae corporis



partēs indīgnābantur, suā cūrā, suō labōre ac ministeriō ventri omnia quaerī,<sup>5</sup> ventrem ipsum in mediō quiētum datīs voluptātibus<sup>6</sup> fruī. Cūr hōc patimur? loquēbantur inter sē; in posterum manūs ad ōs cibum nē feruntō, ōs cibum datum nē accipitō, dentēs nē cōficiuntō. Dēnique conjūrant inter sē, ut ventrem famē domārent. Quid ēvēnit? Tōtum corpus tābescere coepit. Inde appāruit, ventris quoque haud sēgne ministerium esse, nec magis alī quam alere eum, reddentem in omnēs corporis partēs hunc, quō vīvimus vigēmusque, sanguinem. Hāc fābulā narrātā,<sup>7</sup> Menēnius flexit mentēs hominum.

<sup>1</sup> *Rōmae*: at Rome, Locative Case of *Rōma*, see 153, II. 3. <sup>2</sup> *ad plēbem reconciliandam*: to reconcile (win back) the commons (159, 3). <sup>3</sup> *nihil aliud quam*: nothing else than—merely. <sup>4</sup> *suum cuique*: *cuique* is in apposition (so-called Distributive Apposition) with *membris*. Notice the position. <sup>5</sup> *omnia quaerī*: that everything should be sought. Verbs of Expression of Emotion may take the Infinitive like Verbs of Saying and Thinking (155). <sup>6</sup> *voluptātibus fruī*: *fruī* takes the Ablative. <sup>7</sup> *Hāc fābulā narrātā*: By telling this fable. See 160, 2.

#### XVIII.—SĪMIUS RĒX.

In conventū quōdam bestiārum tam bellē saltāverat sīmius, ut cūctīs prope suffrāgiīs rēx creārētur.<sup>1</sup> Vulpēs cum vānum ējus ingenium perspiceret, dixit sīmiō: Postquam rēgnum tibi obtigit, nōn cēlābō tē quod<sup>2</sup> scīre magnopere tuā<sup>3</sup> interest. Quid id est? sīmius interrogat. Thēsaurus, respondet illa, mihi ā patre indicātus est, dēfossus in sōlitūdine, quī jūre rēgnī ad tē jam pertinēre vidētur. Eāmus<sup>4</sup> igitur, inquit sīmius, ut tollāmus. Cavē tū, monet vulpēs; nam equidem saepe audīvī, periculō<sup>5</sup> eam rem nōn carēre. Nihil, inquit sīmius, periculī est; an tū, obsecrō, timēs? Eāmus<sup>4</sup> igitur, inquit vulpēs, sī placet. Postquam per silvās diū circumduxit sīmium, tandem dūcit ad laqueōs sub fruticibus absconditōs, atque ibī dicit thēsaurum dēfossū esse.<sup>6</sup> Sīmius festīnanter terram rādēns capitur. Tum miserē clāmāvit: Auxiliō<sup>7</sup> venī, amīce! At vulpēs, convocātīs bestiīs omnibus:<sup>8</sup> Jam intellegētis, inquit, quantō<sup>9</sup> magis cōnsiliō<sup>10</sup> rēgī et temperantiā opus sit quam arte saltandī.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ut creārētur*: as to be created, that he was made. Sentence of Result. See 156.

<sup>2</sup> *cēlābō tē quod* : conceal from you what, etc. *cēlāre*, to conceal, takes two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing. <sup>3</sup> *tuā interest* : it concerns thee. *interest* takes *meā, tuā*, etc., of the Person concerned. <sup>4</sup> *Eāmus* : 1. Pl. Pres. Subj. of *eō*. <sup>5</sup> *periculō* : See VI. 1, 6. <sup>6</sup> *dēfossū esse* : that it is buried. Accusative and Inf. of Indirect Statement. See 155. <sup>7</sup> *auxiliō venī* : come to [my] help. See VIII. 14. <sup>8</sup> *convocātis—omnibus* : Comp. VII. 6. <sup>9</sup> *quantō* : Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative. See 143, 3. <sup>10</sup> *cōnsiliō rēgī opus* : See VI. 1, 5. <sup>11</sup> *arte saltandī* : art of dancing. *saltandī*, Gen. of Gerund.

XIX.—Codrus.

Post Orestis interitum filiī ejus Penthilus et Tisamenus rēgnāvērunt trienniō.<sup>1</sup> Tum ferē annō octōgēsīmō post Trōjam captam,<sup>2</sup> centēsīmō et vīcēsīmō quam<sup>3</sup> Herculēs ad deōs excessit, Pelopis prōgeniēs, quae omnī hōe tempore pulsīs Heraclīdīs<sup>4</sup> imperium obtinuerat, ab Herculis prōgeniē expellitur. Ducēs recuperandī imperiī<sup>5</sup> fuērunt Tēmenus, Crephontēs, Aristodēmus, quōrum abavus fuerat. Eōdem ferē tempore Athēnae sub rēgibus esse dēsiērunt, quōrum ultimus fuit Codrus, Melanthī filius, vir nōn praetereundus.<sup>6</sup> Quippe cum Lacedaemoniī gravī bellō Atticōs premerent, respondissetque Pŷthius quōrum dux ab hoste esset<sup>7</sup> occīsus eōs futūrōs superiōrēs, dēpositā veste rēgiā,<sup>8</sup> pāstōrālem cultum induit immixtusque castrīs hostium dē industriā rixam injiciēs interemptus est.

<sup>1</sup> *trienniō* : Abl. as Measure of Difference. See 143, 3. <sup>2</sup> *post Trōjam captam* : after Troy taken, after the taking of Troy. <sup>3</sup> *quam = postquam*. <sup>4</sup> *pulsīs Heraclīdīs* : Abl. Abs., 160, 2. <sup>5</sup> *recuperandī imperiī* : of (in) regaining the dominion. See 159, 3. <sup>6</sup> *praetereundus* : Gerundive of *praeterire*. See 159, 6. <sup>7</sup> *quōrum—esset occīsus* : See 155, 2. <sup>8</sup> *dēpositā veste rēgiā* : Abl. Abs. See 160, 2.

XX.—Duo sī faciunt idem, nōn est idem.

Fabrō pauperī,<sup>1</sup> quī pontem trānsibat, secūris dēlapsa est in fluvium profundum. Tum ille, inops cōnsiliī<sup>2</sup> in rīpā sedēns, miserē lāmentārī coepit et clāmāre : Deus fluvii, miserere mei!<sup>3</sup> Deus ēmersit et interrogāvit, cūr lāmentārētur. “Ēheu, secūris mea dēlapsa est in aquam tuam.” Immersus est deus et retulit secūrim, nōn eam tamen, quam āmiserat faber, sed auream, et, num<sup>4</sup> haec esset, quam āmīsisset,<sup>5</sup> interrogāvit. Nōn est, respondet vir probus cum suspīriō. Deus iterum

sē mersit et aliam extulit eamque <sup>6</sup> argenteam. Hanc quoque faber negāvit suam esse. Tertium deus vēram secūrim attulit. Haec est, exclāmāvit faber, grātiās tibi agō, deus benigne! Hāc probitāte dēlectātus deus omnēs illi secūrēs dōnāvit. Faber laetus ad suōs rediit.—Vix rem vīcīnus audiverat, cum ad eundem pontem cum secūrī festināvit. Suā sponte facit ut secūris in aquam dēcideret.<sup>7</sup> Appāret deus. Ēheu, inquit ille, secūrim meam perdidī! Affert deus trēs secūrēs, auream, argenteam, ferream. Ēlige ipse tuam, inquit. Tum ille aurī <sup>8</sup> cupidus: Haec, inquit, mea est, et auream est arreptūrus. Sed jam deus secūrēs omnēs in fluvium rējiciēns: Apage, inquit, homō avāre et mendāx! Nē tuam quidem secūrim recipiēs. Tum ille domum rediit, neque narrāvit cuiquam, ubī secūrim amīsisset.

<sup>1</sup> **Fabrō pauperī**: Depends on **secūris**—delapsa est. *To a poor carpenter the axe slipped, a poor carpenter had his axe to slip.* <sup>2</sup> **inops cōnsiliī**: Adjectives of Want take the Genitive. <sup>3</sup> **miserēre mei**: **Misereor** takes the Genitive. <sup>4</sup> **num**: Asks a question. See 131. <sup>5</sup> **amīsisset**: Subjunctive because of the Relative clause after a Verb of Saying. See 155, 2. <sup>6</sup> **eamque**: *and that.* <sup>7</sup> **facit ut dēcideret**: *manages (managed), that it should, to (make) it fall.* Comp. 156. <sup>8</sup> **aurī cupidus**: Adjectives of Desire take the Genitive.

#### XXI.—Orestēs.

Agamemnōn cum Trōjā revertisset, interfectus est ab Aegisthō et Clytaemnestrā uxōre, quae illi <sup>1</sup> nupserat. Nam in balneīs Clytaemnestra vestem capitī <sup>2</sup> ējus injēcit et adulter secūrī eum percussit. At Ēlectra, Agamemnonis filia, Orestem frātrem infantem servāvit et ad Strophium dētulit. Cum ējus filiō Pylade adolēvit et intimam amīcitiam junxit. Postquam ad pūberem aetātem vēnit, cum illō Mycēnās profectus patris ulciscendī <sup>3</sup> causā mātrem et Aegisthum occīdit. At parricīdam Furiae agitābant. Itaque ōrāculō acceptō <sup>4</sup> amīcī Chersonēsūm Tauricam proficiscuntur, ut dē templō Dīānae sīgnum Argōs afferrent. Ibī regnābat Thoās, cui mōs erat ut <sup>5</sup> hospitem sanguine nūmen plācāret. Comprehēnsī ad templum ductī sunt, ubī Īphigenīa, Orestis soror, erat sacerdos. Cōgnitō frātre, <sup>6</sup> ipsa coepit sīgnum Dīānae āvellere. Intervēnit rēx et Orestem necārī jussit. Sed cum ignōraret,

uter eōrum esset Orestēs, Pyladēs Orestem sē esse dixit, ut prō illō necārētur; Orestēs autem, ita ut erat, Orestem sē esse persevērābat. Rēx mītigātus illōs cum sorōre atque signō Dīānae dīmīsīt. Orestēs redux Hermionam, Menelāi filiam, uxōrem duxit et regnāvit Argīs et Spartaē.

<sup>1</sup> **illi**: Dative dependent on **nupserat**, *had put on the (bridal) veil, had married* (of the woman). <sup>2</sup> **capitī**: Depends on **vestem—injēcit**. <sup>3</sup> **patris ulciscendī causā**: *for the sake of avenging his father, to avenge his father*. See 159, 4. <sup>4</sup> **ōrāculō acceptō**: Abl. Abs. See 160, 2. <sup>5</sup> **cui mōs erat ut**: *to whom there was the custom that he was to appease = who used to appease*. <sup>6</sup> **cōgnitō frātre**: Abl. Abs. See 160, 2.

XXII.—Somnium.

Cum duo quīdam Arcadēs familiārēs iter ūnā facerent, et Megaram vēnissent, alter ad caupōnem dēvertit, ad hospitem alter. Quī ut cēnātī <sup>1</sup> quiēscēbant, concubiā nocte vīsus est in somnīs eī, quī erat in hospitīō, ille alter ōrāre, ut subvenīret, quod sibī ā caupōne interitus parārētur. Primō perterritus somniō surrexit: dein cum sē collēgisset, idque vīsum prō nihilō habendum <sup>2</sup> esse dūceret, recubuit. Tum eī dormienti idem ille vīsus est rogāre, ut, quoniam sibī vīvō nōn subvēnisset, mortem suam nē inultam esse paterētur: sē interfectum in plastrum ā caupōne esse coniectum, et suprā stercus injectum: petere, ut māne ad portam adesset, priusquam plastrum ex oppidō exīret.<sup>3</sup> Hōc vērō <sup>4</sup> somniō commōtus māne bubulcō <sup>5</sup> praestō ad portam fuit; quaesīvit ex eō, quid esset in plastrō. Ille perterritus fūgit, mortuus ērutus est. Caupō, rē patefactā, <sup>6</sup> poenās dedit.

<sup>1</sup> **cēnātī**: Perf. Part. Pass. of **cēnō** with Active meaning. <sup>2</sup> **prō nihilō habendum**: *to be regarded as of no consequence*, Gerundive of **habēō**. See 159, 6. <sup>3</sup> **priusquam exīret**: After positive sentences **priusquam** more commonly takes the Subjunctive. So regularly when the action is not to take place. <sup>4</sup> **vērō**: Conjunction. See VIII. 17. <sup>5</sup> **bubulcō**: Depends on **praestō fuit**, *was ready for, met*. <sup>6</sup> **rē patefactā**: Abl. Abs. See 160, 2.

XXIII.—Nihil magis ridētur quam quod est praeter expectātiōnem.

Cum laesisset testis Silus Pīsōnem, quod sē in eum audisse quaedam dixisset, <sup>1</sup> Crassus ōrātor: “Potest fierī, inquit, Sile, ut <sup>2</sup> is, unde <sup>3</sup> tē audisse <sup>4</sup> dīcis, irātus dixerit.” Annuit Silus. “Potest etiam, ut tū nōn rectē intellexerīs.” Id quoque tōtō



capite annuit. “Potest etiam fierī, inquit, ut omnīnō, quod tē audīsse dīcis, nunquam audierīs.”<sup>4</sup> Hōc ita praeter exspectatiōnem accidit, ut testem omnium rīsus obrueret.

<sup>1</sup> *dixisset*: Subj. in a kind of Ind. Disc. (155, 2): *because* (as P. told C.) *he* (S.) *had said that he had heard some talk against him* (P.). <sup>2</sup> *Potest fierī ut*: Verbs of Happening take *ut* Consecutive. See 156. <sup>3</sup> *unde = ā quō*. <sup>4</sup> *audīsse = audīvisse*; *audierīs = audīverīs*.

#### XXIV.—*Servilis taciturnitās.*

M. Pīsō, orātor Rōmānus, servīs praecēperat, ut taciturnī essent et tantum ad interrogāta respondērent. Aliquando convīvium instituit; invitātus est etiam Clōdīus, quī tum magistrātum gerēbat. Hōra cēnae venit; adsunt convīvae omnēs, sōlus Clōdīus exspectābātur. Pīsō servum, quī solēbat convīvās vocāre, aliquotiēns emīsīt, spectātum, num<sup>1</sup> venīret. Cum vesperāsceret et omnēs de ejus adventū dēspērarent, Pīsō servō: Dīc, inquit, num forte Clōdīum nōn invitāstī?<sup>2</sup>—Invitāvī, respondet ille.—Cūr ergō nōn venīit?<sup>3</sup>—Quia invitātiōnem tuam recūsāvit.—Tum Pīsō: Stīpes! cūr id nōn statim dixistī?<sup>3</sup>—Respondet servus: Quia id<sup>3</sup> nōn sum abs tē interrogātus.

<sup>1</sup> *num*: *Whether*. See 131. <sup>2</sup> *invitāstī = invitāvistī*. <sup>3</sup> *id*: Verbs of Asking take two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing. The second Accusative is retained with the Passive.

#### XXV.—*Quid est deus?*

Cum Hierō tyrannus quaesivisset de Simōnide, quid deus esset, delīberandī causā sibi ūnum diem postulāvit. Cum idem ex eō postrīdiē quaereret, bīduum petīvit. Cum saepius duplicāret numerum diērum, admirānsque Hierō requireret, cūr ita faceret: Quia, quantō,<sup>1</sup> inquit, diūtius cōnsīderō, tantō mihī rēs vidētur obscūrior.

<sup>1</sup> *quantō*: Measure of Difference. See 143, 3.

#### XXVI.—*Androclus et leō.*

Apiōn Alexandrīnus refert, quod neque audīsse sē, neque lēgisse, sed ipsum in urbe Rōmā vīdisse oculīs suis cōnfirmat. In circō maximō, inquit, vēnātiōnēs amplissimae edēbantur.



Ējus rei, Rōmae cum forte essem, spectātor fuī. Multae ibī erant saevientēs ferae inūsitatā<sup>1</sup> formā aut ferōciā. Sed praeter alia omnia leōnum immānitās admirātiōnī<sup>2</sup> fuit praeterque omnēs cēterōs ūnius immānitās. Is ūnus leō corporis māgnitūdine terrificōque fremitū et comīs fluctuantibus animōs oculōsque omnium in sēsē convertit. Intrōductus erat inter complūrēs aliōs ad pūgnam bestiārum servus virī cōsulāris. Eī servō<sup>3</sup> Androclus nōmen fuit. Hunc ille leō ubī vīdit procul, repente quasi admirāns stetit, ac deinde sēnsim atque placidē tanquam nōscitāns ad hominem accēdit; tum caudam mōre atque rītū adūlantium canum blandē movet, hominisque sēsē corporī adjungit, crūraque ējus et manūs, prope jam exanimātī metū, linguā lēniter dēmulcet. Androclus inter illa tam atrōcis ferae blandīmenta missum animum recuperat; paulātīm oculōs ad leōnem refert. Tum, quasi mūtua recōgnitiō fieret, lactī adstitērunt et grātulābundī homō et leō. Eā rē tam admirābilī maximī populī clāmōrēs excitātī sunt, arcessītusque ā Caesare Androclus interrogātus est, cūr ille atrōcissimus leōnum ūnī pepercisset. Ibī Androclus rem mīrificam narrat.

Cum dominus meus, inquit, in prōvinciā Āfricā prōcōsul esset, ego ibī inīquīs ējus et quotīdiānis verberibus ad fugam sum coāctus: et ut mihī ā dominō, terrae illius praeside, tūtiorēs latebrae forent, in campōrum et arēnārum sōlitudinēs concessī, ac sī dēfuisset<sup>4</sup> cibus, cōnsilium fuit, mortem aliquō pactō quaerere. Tum sōl, inquit, cum vehementissimē flagrāret, specum quendam nactus remōtum latebrōsumque, in eum mē recondō. Nōn multō post ad eundem specum vēnit hīc leō, dēbili ūnō et cruentō pede, gemitūs ēdēns et murmura, dolōrem cruciātumque vulneris significantia. Prīmō quidem cōspectū advenientis leōnis territus sum et pavefactus. Sed postquam intrōgressus leō in latibulum suum vīdit mē procul dēlitēscētem, mītis et mānsuētus accessit, ac sublātum<sup>5</sup> pedem porrexit et quasi opem petere vīsus est. Ibī ego stirpem ingentem, vestigiō pedis ējus inhaerentem, revelli, saniemque expressī, accūrātiusque sine māgnā jam formīdine siccāvī penitus atque dē-

tersī cruōrem. Ille tunc meā operā et medelā levātus, pede in manibus meis positō, recubuit et quiēvit. Atque ex eō diē triennium tōtum ego et leō in cōdem specū eōdemque victū viximus. Nam eārum, quās vēnābātur, ferārum membra opīmiōra ad specum mihi suggerēbat, quae ego, īgnis cōpiam nōn habēns, sōle merīdiānō tosta<sup>6</sup> edēbam. Sed ubī mē vitae illius ferīnae jam pertaesum est,<sup>7</sup> leōne vēnātum profectō, reliquī specum, et viam fermē trīduī permēnsus, ā militibus vīsus comprehēnsusque sum, et ad dominum ex Āfricā Rōmam dēductus. Is mē statim capitis<sup>8</sup> damnāvit deditque ad bestiās. Vidētur autem hīc quoque leō posteā captus nunc grātiā mihi beneficii et medicīnae referre. Haec Androclus. Tum cūctōrum precibus dīmissus est et poenā solūtus, leōque eī suffrāgiīs populī dōnātus. Posteā vidēbāmus Androclum et leōnem, lōrō tenuī revinctum, urbe tōtā circum tabernās ire. Dōnābātur aere Androclus, flōribus spargēbātur leō; omnēs ferē obviī dīcēbant: Hīc est leō hospes hominis, hīc est homō medicus leōnis.

<sup>1</sup> inūsītātā formā: Abl. of Quality, of unusual appearance. <sup>2</sup> admirātiōni: Dat. of Object, an object of admiration. VIII. 14. <sup>3</sup> servō nōmen fuit: to the slave there was the name, the slave was named. <sup>4</sup> sī dēfuisset: if it should fail. <sup>5</sup> sublātum—pedem: raised his paw AND . . . Comp. I. 13. <sup>6</sup> tosta, Pf. Pass. Part. of torreō. tosta-edēbam: roasted AND . . . <sup>7</sup> vitae pertaesum est: it tired me of, I became tired of.—pertaesum est, Perf. of pertaedet, which takes the Acc. of the Person, and the Gen. of the Thing. <sup>8</sup> capitis: Gen. of Punishment, after the Verb of Condemning. —

# VOCABULARY.

## I.—LATIN—ENGLISH.

### A.

**Ā**, ab, abs, *from, by*.  
 abavus, ī, *great-great-grandfather*.  
 abdūcō, 3. duxī, ductum, *lead away, take*.  
 abeō, 4. iī, itum, *go away*.  
 abigō, 3. ēgī, āctum, *drive away*.  
 abjiciō (ābiciō), 3. jēcī, jectum, *throw away*.  
 abscondō, 3. condī (didī), conditum, *hide*. [gone.  
 absum, abesse, āfui, *to be absent*.  
 ac, atque, *and, as*.  
 acanthis, idis, f., *gold-finch*.  
 accēdō, 3. cessī, cessum, *approach, be added*. [light.  
 accendō, 3. ī, nsum, *to set on fire*.  
 accidō, 3. cidī, —, *happen, turn out*. [ceive, learn.  
 accipiō, 3. cēpī, ceptum, *take, receive*.  
 accipiter, tris, m., *hawk*.  
 accurātē, *carefully*.  
 accurō, 3. curī, cursum, *run up*.  
 aciēs, ēī, f., *edge, line of battle*;  
 aciē pūgnāre, *fight a pitched battle*.  
 ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, biting, violent*; adv., ācriter.  
 acūtus, a, um, *pointed, sharp, witty*.  
 ad, to, at, before.  
 addō, 3. didī, ditum, *add*.  
 addūcō, 3. duxī, ductum, *lead, bring up; lead on (induce)*.  
 adf. See aff. [use, employ.  
 adhibeō, 2. apply, call in, invite,  
 adjungō, 3. junxī, junctum, *join, attach*. [ble.  
 admirābilis, e, *wonderful, admira-*

*admīrātiō, ōnis, f., wonder*.  
 admīror, 1. *admire, wonder*.  
 admoneō, 2. *admonish*. [up, to.  
 admoveō, 2. mōvī, mōtum, *move*.  
 adnatō, 1. *swim up*.  
 adolescō, 3. olēvī, ultum, *grow up*.  
 adstō, 1. stitī, —, *stand by, near, there*.  
 adsum, esse, affui, *be present, be upon (one), present oneself*.  
 adūlātor, ōris, m., *flatterer*.  
 adūlor, 1. *flatter, fawn*.  
 adulter, eri, *paramour*.  
 adveniō, 4. vēnī, ventum, *arrive, draw near*.  
 adventus, ūs, *arrival, coming*.  
 adversus, a, um, *adverse*.  
 advolō, 1. *fly, hurry up*.  
 aedis (aedēs), is, f., *temple, pl., house*.  
 aeger, gra, grum, *sick*.  
 Aegisthus, ī, *Aegisthus, cousin of Agamemnon*.  
 aegrōtus, a, um, *sick*.  
 āēr, āēris, m., *air*.  
 aes, aeris, n., *copper, money*.  
 aestimō, 1. *value*.  
 aetās, ātis, f., *age; aetātem agere, spend life*. [(up, to).  
 afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *bring*.  
 affirmō, 1. *assure, affirm, aver*.  
 Agamemnōn, ōnis, *K. of Mycenae*.  
 agāsō, ōnis, *groom, ass-driver*.  
 ager, grī, m., *field, territory*.  
 agitō, 1. *drive violently*.  
 agō, 3. ēgī, āctum, *drive, bring, act, treat; causam a., plead a case*.  
 agricola, ae, *husbandman, farmer*.  
 ait (fr. ājo), *he says*.

- Alexander, drī, *Alexander (the Great)*. [*in Egypt.*]  
 Alexandrinus, a, um, *of Alexandria*  
 aliquando, *once, one day.*  
 aliquis, qua, quid, subst., *some one or other.* [*any.*]  
 aliqui, quae (qua), quod, adj., *some,*  
 aliquot, *some, several.*  
 aliquoties, *several times.*  
 alius, a, ud, *another, other*; aliud—aliud, *one—another.*  
 alii—alii, *some—others.*  
 allatrō, 1. *bark at.*  
 alloquor, 3. locutus sum, *address.*  
 alō, 3. alui, altum, *nourish, keep.*  
 alter, era, erum, *the one, the other, second.*  
 altercor, 1. *wrangle.*  
 altus, a, um, *high, tall, deep*; altum, ī, *the deep (sea).*  
 amārus, a, um, *bitter.*  
 ambulō, 1. *walk.*  
 amicitia, ae, *friendship.* [*friend.*]  
 amicus, a, um, *friendly*; subst., a  
 amittō, 3. misi, missum, *lose.*  
 amnis, is, m., *river.*  
 amō, 1. *love.* [*a large scale.*]  
 amplus, a, um, *spacious, ample, on an, or, perhaps.*  
 ancilla, ae, *maidservant.*  
 anguis, is, c., *snake.*  
 anima, ae, *breath, soul.*  
 animadvertō, 3. verti, **versum**,  
*observe, notice.*  
 animal, ālis, n., *animal.*  
 animus, ī, *mind, courage.*  
 annectō, 3. nexi, nexum, *to attach*;  
 tintinnābulum a., *to bell.*  
 annō, 3. uī, ūtum, *give a nod, nod (assent).*  
 annus, ī, *year.*  
 ānser, eris, m., *goose.*  
 ante, prep., *before.*  
 anteā (ante), adv., *before.*  
 antecēdō, 3. cessi, cessum, *precede, get the start, be ahead.*  
 antiquus, a, um, *old, ancient.*  
 anxius, a, um, *anxious.*  
 apage, *begone, get you gone.* [*open.*]  
 aperio, 4. uī, rtum, *disclose, reveal,*  
 appāreō, 2. uī, —, *appear.*  
 apportō, 1. *bring (up), fetch.*  
 appropinquō, 1. *approach.*
- apricor, 1. *bask, sun oneself.* [*of.*]  
 apud, at, with, at the house (table)  
 aqua, ae, *water.*  
 aquila, ae, *eagle.*  
 arānea, ae, *spider.*  
 arbor, ōris, f., *tree.*  
 Arcas, ādis, *Arcadian.*  
 arcessō, 3. iui, itum, *send for.*  
 arēna, ae, (har), *arena*; arēnae  
 sōlitūdō, *sandy desert.*  
 argenteus, a, um, *of silver.*  
 Argi, ōrum, *Argos.*  
 Argonautae, ārum, *the Argonauts, sailors in the ship Argo.*  
 arrēpō, 3. repsi, reptum, *crawl up.*  
 arrigō, 3. rexi, rectum, *raise up, prick up.*  
 arripio, 3. ripui, reptum, *snatch.*  
 ars, artis, f., *art, quality.* [*former.*]  
 artifex, icis, *artist, artificer, per-*  
 arvum, ī, *field.* [*go up.*]  
 ascendō, 3. ī, nsum, *ascend, mount,*  
 asinus, ī, *ass, donkey.*  
 aspectus, ūs, *sight.* [*see.*]  
 aspicio, 3. spexi, spectum, *behold,*  
 asportō, 1. *carry off.*  
 at, *but.*  
 Athēnae, ārum, pl., *Athens.*  
 Athēniēnsis, e, *Athenian.*  
 atque, *and.*  
 atrox, ōcis, adj., *savage.*  
 attentus, a, um, *attentive.*  
 Atticus, a, um, *Attic, of Attica.*  
 attingō, 3. tigi, tactum, *touch, reach.*  
 auctor, ōris, *author.*  
 audeō, 2. ausus sum, *dare.*  
 audiō, 4. *hear.* [*carry away.*]  
 auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātum,  
 aufugio, 3. fugi, fugitum, *flee, run away.*  
 aureus, a, um, *golden.*  
 auricula, ae, *tip of the ear.*  
 auriga, ae, *charioteer, driver.*  
 auris, is, f., *ear.*  
 aurum, ī, *gold.*  
 auscultō, 1. *listen.*  
 aut, or; aut—aut, *either—or.*  
 autem (postpositive), *but, however.*  
 auxilium, ī, *help*; pl., *reinforce-*  
 ments.  
 avārus, a, um, *avaricious.*  
 āvellō, 3. vellī, vulsum, *tear, pluck away.*



āvertō, 3. vertī, versum, *turn aside, avert.*

avis, is, f., *bird.*

āvolo, 1. *fly away.*

avus, 1, *grandfather.*

## B.

Bacillum, 1, *stick, staff.*

balneae, ārum, plur., *baths.*

barbarus, a, um, *barbarous, barbarian, outlandish.*

beātus, a, um, *blessed.*

bellē, *finely.*

bellum, 1, *war.*

bēlua, ae, *beast, animal.*

bene, *well.*

beneficium, 1, *benefit.* [*hearted.*

benevolus, a, um, *benevolent, kind-*

benignus, a, um, *good-natured, kind.*

bestia, ae, *animal, beast.*

bestiola, ae, *poor little beast.*

Bīās, ntis, *one of the seven wise men of Greece.*

bibō, 3. bibī, —, *drink.*

biceps, cipitis, *two-headed.*

biduum, 1, *space of two days.*

bis, *twice.*

blandimentum, 1, *flattery, caress.*

blandior, 4. *flatter, caress.*

blanditia, ae, *caress, blandishment.*

blandus, a, um, *insinuating, coaxing, cajoling, smirking.*

bonus, a, um, *good.*

bōs, bovis, c., *ox, cow*; pl., *oxen,*

brevis, e, *short.*

bubulcus, 1, *cowherd, neatherd.*

## C.

C. = Cālus, or Gāius.

cadāver, eris, n., *corpse, dead body.*

caedō, 3. cecīdī, caesum, *fell, hew.*

caelum, 1, *heaven, sky.*

Caesar, āris, *Caesar = Emperor.*

calamitās, ātis, f., *disaster, calamity.*

calculus, 1, *stone, piece (at draughts), man.*

Caligula, ae, *a Roman Emperor.*

callidus, a, um, *sly.*

campus, 1, *plain, campus.*

canis, is, c., *dog, hound.*

canō, 3. cecinī, cantum, *sing.*

cantō, 1. *sing.*

cantus, ūs, *song, singing.*

capella, ae, *kid.*

capiō, 3. cēpī, captum, *catch, seize,* [*take.*

capitālis, e, *capital, mortal.*

captivus, a, um, *captive.*

caput, itis, n., *head*; capitis, capite *damnāre, condemn to death.*

careō, 2. *be, do without.*

carmen, inis, n., *poem.*

carō, carnis, f., *flesh.*

cārus, a, um, *dear.*

castīgō, 1. *chastise.*

castra, ōrum, n. pl., *camp.*

catulus, 1, *puppy, whelp.*

cauda, ae, *tail.*

caupō, ōnis, *innkeeper.*

causa, ae, *cause, case (suit).*

cautus, a, um, *cautious.*

cavea, ae, *cage.*

caveō, 2. cāvī, cautum, *beware.*

celebrō, 1. *celebrate.*

celer, eris, ere, *quick.*

cēlō, 1. *conceal (from).*

cēna, ae, *dinner.*

cēnō, 1. *dine*; cēnātus, pf. part. *pass., that has dined.*

centēsimus, a, um, *hundredth.*

centuriō, ōnis, *captain.* [*test.*

cernō, 3. (crēvī), (crētum), *perceive,*

certāmen, inis, n., *contest.*

certē, *surely, at least.*

certō, *certainly.*

certus, a, um, *certain, sure*; certi-  
ōrem facere, *inform.*

cervus, 1, *stag.*

cēteri, ae, a, *the rest, others, every-*

Chersonēsus Taurica, *Tauric*  
*Chersonēsus (Crimea).*

cibus, 1, *food, victuals.*

cicōnia, ae, *stork.*

circulus, 1, *circle, gathering.*

circum, *around.*

circumdūcō, 3. duxī, ductum, *lead*  
*round (and round).*

circus, 1, *circle, ring, course, circus.*

citus, a, um, *quick*; adv., cito, *quick-*  
*ly, soon.*

citō, 1. *summon.*

cīvis, is, c., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*

clam, *secretly.*

clāmō, 1. *cry aloud.*

clāmōr, ōris, m., *oulcry, yell.*



- clārus, a, um, *clear, loud, renowned, bright, famous.*
- claudō, 3. clausī, clausum, *shut; clausum in pectore, at the bottom of the heart.*
- climax, ācis, f, *climax.*
- clitellae, ārum, pl., *pack-saddle.*
- coepī, coepisse (def. verb), *began.*
- cōgitō, 1. *think.* [out, recognize.
- cōgnōscō, 3. gnōvī, gnitum, *find*
- cōgō, 3. coēgī, coāctum, *compel, collect.*
- Colchī, ōrum, pl., *city of Colchis.*
- colligō, 1. *bind up.*
- colligō, 3. lēgī, lectum, *gather, collect; sē colligere, come to one's senses.*
- collum, ī, *neck.* [honor.
- colō, 3. coluī, cultum, *worship,*
- color, ōris, m., *color.*
- coluber, brī, *adder; snake.*
- coma, ae, *hair, mane.*
- comes, itis, c., *companion.*
- cōmitās, ātis, f., *civility.*
- committō, 3. misi, missum, *commit; pugnam c., join battle.*
- commodum, ī, *advantage, profit.*
- commoveō, 2. mōvī, mōtum, *move, stir.*
- comparō, 1. *compare, procure, bring.*
- complector, 3. plexus sum, *embrace, comprise.*
- complūrēs, a (ia), *several, a great many.* [arrest, catch.
- comprehendō, 3. ndi, nsum, *seize,*
- concēdō, 3. cessī, cessum, *withdraw, betake oneself, grant; concēdere vitam, spare life.*
- concupiō, 3. cēpi, ceptum, *conceive.*
- concordia, ae, *concord, harmony.*
- concors, cordis, adj., *harmonious.*
- concupiā nocte, *time of the first deep sleep.* [gether.
- concurrō, 3. curri, cursum, *run to-*
- condō, 3. didī, ditum, *build, found, hide, bury.*
- condōnō, 1. *present, grant.*
- condūcō, 3. duxī, ductum, *bring together, hire.*
- cōnficiō, 3. fecī, fectum, *finish, wear out, chew (up).*
- cōnfidō, 3. cōnfisus sum (with Dat.), *trust, put confidence in.*
- cōnfirmō, 1. *strengthen, aver.*
- cōnfringō, 3. fōdī, fōssum, *stab.*
- cōnfringō, 3. frēgī, fractum, *crush, snap.*
- conjiciō (cōnicipiō), 3. jēcī, jectum, *throw (together), bring, conjecture.*
- conjūrō, 1. *conspire.*
- conjux (conjunx), ugis, c., *consort (husband, wife).*
- cōnor, 1. *endeavor, attempt.*
- cōnscendō, 3. ndī, nsum, *mount, climb.*
- cōnscius, a, um, *aware.*
- cōnsequor, 3. secūtus sum, *reach, attain, overtake.*
- cōnsiderō, 1. *consider.*
- cōnsidō, 3. sēdī, sessum, *take a seat.*
- cōnsilium, ī, *counsel, plan, advice.*
- cōnspectus, ūs, *sight, view.*
- cōnspiciō, 3. spexī, spectrum, *behold, espy.*
- cōnspicor, 1. *catch sight of.*
- cōnstituō, 3. uī, ūtum, *establish, fix, determine.* [bind together.
- cōnstringō, 3. strinxī, strictum, *bind together.*
- cōnsul, is, *consul.*
- cōnsulāris (vir), *ex-consul.*
- cōnsulātus, ūs, *consulship.*
- cōnsulō, 3. uī, ultum, *consult.*
- cōnsultō, 1. *take counsel.*
- contegō, 3. texī, tectum, *cover up.*
- contemplor, 1. *gaze at.*
- contendō, 3. ndi, ntum, *strive.*
- contentiō, ōnis, f., *exertion, contention.*
- contineō, 2. tinuī, tentum, *contain, hold, keep (close).* [out break.
- continuus, a, um, *continuous, without,*
- contrā, *against; adv., on the other hand, opposite side.*
- contrectō, 1. *paw.*
- convellō, 3. velli, vulsum, *to pluck, pull violently.*
- conveniō, 4. vēnī, ventum, *assemble, be convenient; c. aliquem, visit; convenit, it is agreed.*
- conventus, ūs, *meeting, assembly.*
- convertō, 3. vertī, versum, *turn about, towards.*
- convicium, ī, *reviling, railing; convicia dicere, make hard speeches.*
- conviva, ae, c., *guest.*

convivium, i, banquet, party.  
 convocō, 1. convoke.  
 cōpia, ae, store, abundance, opportunity, way of getting; cōpiae, forces, resources.  
 cornū, ūs, horn; wing (of army).  
 corpus, oris, n., body, person.  
 corripō, 3. ripuī, reptum, seize.  
 corrupō, 3. rūpī, ruptum, corrupt, bribe.  
 corvus, i, raven.  
 coturnix, icis, f., quail.  
 crēdō, 3. didī, ditum, trust, believe.  
 cremō, 1. burn.  
 creō, 1. create, choose. [crease.  
 crēsō, 3. crēvī, crētum, grow, increase.  
 cruciātus, ūs, torture.  
 cruciō, 1. torture.  
 crūdēlis, e, cruel.  
 crūdēlītās, ātis, f., cruelty.  
 cruentus, a, um, bloody.  
 cruor, ōris, m., gore, blood.  
 crūs, ūris, n., leg.  
 cucūlus, i, cuckoo.  
 culex, icis, m., gnat.  
 cultus, ūs, attire, garb.  
 cum, prep., with; conj., when, as, since; cum—tum, both—and; cum primum, as soon as, just as.  
 cūnae, ārum, pl., cradle.  
 cūctus, a, um, all (together).  
 cupidus, a, um, eager, greedy.  
 cupiō, 3. cupivī, cupitum, desire.  
 cūr, why.  
 cūra, ae, care.  
 cūrō, 1. care for, nurse.  
 currō, 3. cucurri, cursum, run.  
 custōdiō, 4. guard.  
 custōs, ōdis, m., guard.  
 Cynicus, i, Cynic.

## D.

Damnō, 1. condemn. [down from.  
 dē (prep. w. Abl.), from, of, about,  
 dea, ae, goddess.  
 dēbeō, 2. owe, ought, must.  
 dēbilis, e, weak, disabled.  
 dēcēdō, 3. cessī, cessum, go away, get out of the way, die.  
 decem, ten.  
 decet, it becomes.  
 dēcīdō, 3. cidī, —, fall down.

dēcipiō, 3. cēpī, ceptum, deceive (take in).  
 dēdūcō, 3. duxī, ductum, bring down, launch, take home.  
 dēfectus, a, um, worn out.  
 dēfendō, 3. ndī, nsum, defend.  
 dēferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, carry, convey down, out of one's course, drift.  
 dēfodiō, 3. fōdī, fossum, to bury.  
 dēformītās, ātis, f., ugliness.  
 dein, deinde, then.  
 dējiciō (dēcīcīō), 3. jēcī, jectum, throw down, off. [slip down.  
 dēlābor, 3. lapsus sum, fall down.  
 dēlectō, 1. delight. [late.  
 dēleō, 2. blot out, destroy, annihilate.  
 dēliberō, 1. deliberate, weigh.  
 dēlitescō, 3. lituī, —, skulk, lurk.  
 Delphī, ōrum, pl., Delphi, seat of the oracle of Apollo.  
 dēmīttō, 3. mīsī, missum, let down.  
 dēmōnstrō, 1. show.  
 dēmūlceō, 2. mulsi, mulsum, stroke, lick.  
 dēmum, at length, not—until.  
 dēnique, finally.  
 dēns, ntis, m., tooth.  
 dēplōrō, 1. bewail.  
 dēpōnō, 3. posuī, positum, lay down, aside, deposit. [at.  
 dērīdeō, 2. rīsī, risum, deride, jeer.  
 dēscendō, 3. ndī, nsum, descend, come down, resort to.  
 dēsīderō, 1. long for.  
 dēsīgnō, 1. designate.  
 dēsīnō, 3. dēsīi, dēsītum, leave off, cease. [off.  
 dēsīstō, 3. stītī, stītum, desist, leave.  
 dēspērō, 1. despair (of), give up in despair.  
 dēsūm, deesse, dēfūi, be wanting, fail.  
 dētegō, 3. texī, tectum, take off.  
 dētergeō, 2. (3.) tersī, tersum, wipe off.  
 deus, i, god. [lodging.  
 dēvertō, 3. vertī, versum, to take.  
 dēvolō, 1. fly down.  
 dēvorō, 1. devour.  
 dexter, tra, trum, and tera, terum, right; dextrā, to the right.  
 Dīāna, ae, sister of Apollo.

dīcō, 3. dixī, dictum, *say*.  
 dictō, 1. *dictate*.  
 diēs, eī, c., *day*; in diēs, *day by day*.  
 dilacerō, 1. *tear in pieces*.  
 dilaniō, 1. *mangle*.  
 diligēns, ntis, *careful, diligent*.  
 diligenter, adv., *carefully*.  
 diligentia, ae, *care*.  
 dīmittō, 3. mīsī, missum, *dismiss, let slip, let go*.  
 Diogenēs, is, *a philosopher*.  
 discēdō, 3. cessī, cessum, *depart*.  
 discidium, ī, *dissension*.  
 discindō, 3. scidī, scissum, *tear open, cut apart*.  
 discipulus, ī, *scholar, pupil*.  
 discordia, ae, *discord*.  
 displiceō, 2. (with Dat.) *displease*.  
 disputō, 1. *discuss, maintain, dispute, argue*.  
 dīssēnsiō, ōnis, f., *dissension*.  
 diū, adv., *long*; comp. diūtius.  
 dīvitiae, ārum, pl., *riches*.  
 dō, dāre, dedī, dātum, *give*.  
 doceō, 2. uī, doctum, *teach*.  
 dolor, ōris, m., *pain, anguish*.  
 dolōsus, a, um, *deceitful*.  
 dolus, ī, *trick, wile*.  
 dominus, ī, *master, owner*.  
 domō, 1. domuī, domitum, *tame, subdue*.  
 domus, ūs, f., *house*; domī, at home; domum, home; domō, from home.  
 dōnec, *while, until*.  
 dōnō, 1. *present*.  
 dormiō, 4. *sleep*.  
 dorsum, ī, *back*.  
 dubitō, 1. *doubt, hesitate*.  
 dubius, a, um, *doubtful, undecided*; sine dubiō, *without doubt*.  
 dūcō, 3. duxī, ductum, *lead, take home (= marry), protract, deem*; ad mortem dūcere, *lead to execution*.  
 dulcis, e, *sweet*.  
 dum, *while, so long as, until*.  
 duo, duae, duo, *two*.  
 duodecim, *twelve*.  
 duplicō, 1. *double*.  
 dūrus, a, um, *hard, hard-hearted*.  
 dux, ducis, *leader*.

## E.

Ē, see ex.  
 ēdō, 3. ēdidī, ēditum, *put forth, utter, perform, exhibit*.  
 edō, 3. ēdī, ēsum, *eat*. [out, bury.  
 efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *carry*  
 effugiō, 3. fūgī, fugitum, *escape, scamper (off)*.  
 ēgregius, a, um, *excellent*.  
 ēheu, *alas!*  
 ējulō, 1. *wail*.  
 ēligō, 3. (legō), *pick out*.  
 ēmergō, 3. mersī, mersum, *emerge*.  
 ēmineō, 2. uī, —, *stick out*.  
 ēmittō, 3. mīsī, missum, *sent forth, let go, shoot*.  
 ēn, *lo!*  
 ēnarrō, 1. *recount, tell*.  
 enim (postpositive), *for*.  
 eō, 149, *to go*. [Ephesus.  
 Ephesius, a, um, *Ephesian*, of  
 equa, ae, *mare*.  
 eques, itis, *rider, cavalryman*.  
 equidem, *verily, the fact is*.  
 equus, ī, *horse*.  
 ergō, *therefore*. [take away.  
 ēripiō, 3. ēripuī, ēreptum, *snatch*,  
 Eris, idis, *goddess of discord*.  
 errō, 1. *err, wander, stray*.  
 error, ōris, m., *error, mistake*.  
 ēruō, 3. uī, ūtum, *tear out, drag, pluck out, destroy*.  
 erus, ī, *master*. [giant Geryon.  
 Erythīa, ae, *island, where dwelt the et, and*; et—et, both—and.  
 etiam, *even, still, also, too*.  
 ēvādō, 3. vāsī, vāsum, *come forth, escape, turn out*. [be the upshot.  
 ēveniō, 4. vēnī, ventum, *happen*,  
 ēvertō, 3. vertī, versum, *overturn*.  
 ēvitō, 1. *avoid, get out of the way of*.  
 ēvocō, 1. *call out*.  
 ex (ē), *out of, from, by*. [(life).  
 excēdō, 3. cessī, cessum, *depart*  
 excellō, 3. uī, —, (with Dat.) *excel*.  
 excidō, 3. excidī, —, *fall out, drop from*. [receive, catch, welcome.  
 excipiō, 3. cēpī, ceptum, *accept*,  
 excitō, 1. *stir up, excite, awake*.  
 exclāmō, 1. *cry out*. [cut off.  
 exclūdō, 3. clūsī, clūsum, *shut out*,



exemplum, *i*, *example*.  
 exeō, 4. *ii*, *itum*, *go out*.  
 exercēō, 2. *practisc*, *exercise*.  
 exercitātiō, ōnis, *f.*, *practice*, *exercise*.  
 exercitus, ūs, *army*. [*exact*, *spend*.  
 exigō, 3. *ēgī*, *actum*, *expel*, *execute*,  
 exiguus, *a*, *um*, *small*, *scant*.  
 expellō, 3. *pulī*, *pulsum*, *expel*,  
*banish*. [*to the test*.  
 experior, 4. *expertus sum*, *try*, *put*  
 explōrō, 1. *spy out*, *examine*.  
 exprimō, 3. *pressī*, *pressum*, *ex-*  
*press*, *squeeze out*.  
 expectātiō, ōnis, *f.*, *expectation*.  
 exstinguō, 3. *stinxi*, *stinctum*, *put*  
*out*, *extinguish*, *kill*.  
 exterreō, 2. *frighten*.  
 extrahō, 3. *traxī*, *tractum*, *draw*  
*out*, *get out*, *extract*.

## F.

Faber, *brī*, *carpenter*.  
 fābula, *ae*, *fable*, *story*, *play*.  
 faciēs, *eī*, *face*.  
 facilis, *e*, *easy*; *facile*, *adv.*, *easily*.  
 facinus, *oris*, *n.*, *deed*.  
 faciō, 3. *fēcī*, *factum*, *make*, *do*.  
 factum, *i*, *deed*. [*speech*.  
 fācundus, *a*, *um*, *eloquent*, *of ready*  
 fallāx, *ācis*, *deceitful*.  
 fallō, 3. *fefelli*, *falsum*, *deceive*, *dis-*  
*appoint*.  
 famēs, *is*, *f.*, *hunger*, *famine*.  
 familiāris, *e*, *intimate* (*friend*); *rēs*  
*familiāris*, *property*.  
 famulus, *i*, *servant*.  
 fasciculus, *i*, *little bundle*.  
 fascis, *is*, *m.*, *bundle*.  
 fatigō, 1. *fatigue*. [*pleton*, *fool*.  
 fatuus, *a*, *um*, *silly*; *subst.*, *sim-*  
*fel*, *fellis*, *n.*, *gall*.  
 fēlēs, *is*, *f.*, *cat*.  
 fēlix, *cis*, *happy*.  
 fēmina, *ae*, *woman*, *female*.  
 fenestra, *ae*, *window*.  
 fera, *ae*, *wild beast*.  
 ferē, *almost*, *about*.  
 ferinus, *a*, *um*, *of wild beasts*.  
 fermē, *about*.  
 ferō, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *bear*.  
 ferōcia, *ae*, *fierceness*.  
 ferōx, *cis*, *fierce*.  
 ferreus, *a*, *um*, *iron*, *of iron*.  
 ferus, *a*, *um*, *wild*, *savage*.  
 festinanter, *hastily*.  
 festinō, 1. *hasten*, *make haste*.  
 fidēlis, *e*, *faithful*.  
 fidēs, *eī*, *trust*, *faith*, *faithfulness*.  
 filia, *ae*, *daughter*.  
 filiolus, *i*, *little son*.  
 filius, *i*, *son*.  
 finis, *is*, *m.*, *end*, *border*.  
 fiō, fierī, *factus sum*, *become*, *hap-*  
*pen*, *take place*.  
 flāgitō, 1. *demand*.  
 flagrō, 1. *burn*.  
 flamma, *ae*, *flame*.  
 flēbilis, *e*, *tearful*, *doleful*.  
 flectō, 3. *flexī*, *flexum*, *bend*, *pre-*  
*vail on*.  
 fleō, 2. *flēvī*, *flētum*, *weep*.  
 flōs, flōris, *m.*, *flower*, *bloom*.  
 fluctuō, 1. *wave*, *waver*.  
 fluctus, ūs, *flood*, *wave*.  
 fluvius, *i*, *river*.  
 fōns, fontis, *m.*, *fountain*, *spring*.  
 fore, *Fut. Inf.* of *sum*.  
 forma, *ae*, *form*, *shape*, *appearance*.  
 formidō, *inis*, *f.*, *fear*.  
 formōsus, *a*, *um*, *beautiful*.  
 forte, *by chance*.  
 fortis, *e*, *brave*. [*tude*.  
 fortitudō, *inis*, *f.*, *bravery*, *forti-*  
 fortuna, *ae*, *fortune*. [*crush*.  
 frangō, 3. *frēgī*, *fractum*, *break*,  
 frāter, frātris, *brother*.  
 fraudō, 1. *cheat*.  
 fraus, fraudis, *f.*, *cheat*, *fraud*.  
 fremitus, ūs, *roar*.  
 fremō, 3. *uī*, *itum*, *roar*.  
 frēnum, *i*, *bit*, *bridle*.  
 fruor, 3. *fruitus*, *fructus*, *enjoy*.  
 frūstrā, *in vain*.  
 frustum, *i*, *bit*.  
 frutex, *icis*, *m.*, *shrub*.  
 fuga, *ae*, *flight*.  
 fugiō, 3. *fūgī*, *fugitum*, *flee*, *escape*.  
 fugitivus, *a*, *um*, *fugitive*, *runaway*.  
 fugō, 1. *put to flight*, *chase away*.  
 fulgēō, 2. *fulsī*, —, *glitter*, *shine*.  
 fūr, *is*, *thief*. [*vengeance*.  
 Furiae, ārum, *pl.*, *furies*, *spirits of*  
 (furō), 3. — —, *rave*, *rage*.  
 fustis, *is*, *m.*, *cudgel*.

## G.

Gājus, Gāius, a Roman praenomen.  
 Gallia, ae, Gaul.  
 gallina, ae, hen.  
 gallus, i, cock.  
 gaudeō, 2. gāvīsus sum, rejoice.  
 gaudium, i, joy.  
 gemitus, ūs, groan.  
 gener, i, son-in-law.  
 generōsus, a, um, noble, generous.  
 gerō, 3. gessī, gestum, carry on, wage, perform.  
 glōria, ae, glory.  
 gracilis, e, slender.  
 gracilitās, ātis, f., slenderness.  
 graculus, i, jackdaw.  
 Graecus, a, um, of Greece, Grecian.  
 grātia, ae, gratitude, favor; grātiam habēre, feel thankful; g. referre, return favor, make return for; grātiās agere, return thanks, thank. [ing.  
 grātulābundus, a, um, congratulat-  
 grātus, a, um, grateful.  
 gravis, e, heavy, severe, grievous.  
 grex, gregis, m., flock, herd.  
 grūs, gruis, f., crane.  
 guttur, uris, n., throat.

## H.

Habeō, 2. have, hold, regard.  
 haereō, 2. haesī, haesum, stick, hesitate.  
 haruspex, icis, m., haruspex.  
 haud, not. [(water, etc.).  
 hauriō, 4. hausī, haustum, draw  
 Helena, ae, Helen, wife of Menelaus.  
 Hēraclīdae, ārum, descendants of Hercules.  
 herba, ae, herb, grass.  
 Herculēs, is, a hero, son of Jupiter and Alcmena.  
 Hermiona, ae, Hermione, daughter of Menelaus and Helen.  
 Hesperidēs, um, daughters of Hesperus.  
 heus, ho!  
 hīc, haec, hōc, this.  
 hīc, adv., here, at this point.  
 hiems (hiemps), hiemis, m., winter.  
 Hispānia, ae, Spain.

homō, inis, c., man, human being, fellow; plur., people.  
 hōra, ae, hour. [man poet.  
 Horātius, i, Horace, a famous Roman.  
 horrendus, a, um, horrible.  
 hortus, i, garden.  
 hospes, itis, stranger, guest, host.  
 hospitium, i, friend's house.  
 hostis, is, c., enemy.  
 hūmānus, a, um, human.  
 humilis, e, low.  
 humō, 1. bury, inter. [ground.  
 humus, i, f., ground; humī, on the

## I.

Ibī, there.  
 Īda, ae, mountain near Troy.  
 idem, eadem, idem, the same.  
 ideō, on that account. [fore.  
 igitur (generally postpositive), there-  
 ignis, is, m., fire.  
 ignōrō, 1. be ignorant of, not know.  
 ignōscō, 3. ignōvī, ignōtum, (w. Dat.), forgive.  
 ille, illa, illud, that.  
 imāgō, inis, f., likeness, image.  
 imitābilis, e, imitable.  
 imitor, 1. imitate.  
 immānitās, ātis, f., enormity, inhumanity. [in.  
 immergō, 3. mersī, mersum, plunge  
 immisceō, 2. miscuī, mixtum, mix in, get into, in among.  
 immolō, 1. sacrifice.  
 impediō, 4. hinder, entangle.  
 imperātor, ōris, general, emperor.  
 imperium, i, (supreme) command, rule, reign. [govern.  
 imperō, 1. command, give orders,  
 impōnō, 3. posuī, positum, put in, on, impose.  
 importūnus, a, um, pressing, importunate, churlish.  
 improbus, a, um, naughty, wicked, remorseless; subst., knave.  
 imprōvīsus, a, um, unforeseen, unexpected.  
 imprūdēns, ntis, imprudent, unwittingly. [less.  
 impudēns, ntis, impudent, shame-in, in, on, against, to, into.



incautus, a, um, adv., incautē, *incautious*.

incertus, a, um, *uncertain*.

incidō, 3. cidī, cāsum, *fall into, chance upon*.

incipiō, 3. cēpi, ceptum, *begin*.

inclūdō, 3. clūsī, clūsum, *shut up*.

incolumis, e, *unhurt*.

India, ae, *India*.

indignor, 1. *be indignant*.

induō, 3. uī, ūtum, *put on, dress, array*. [purposely.]

industriā, ae, *energy*; de industriā,

ineō, 4. īi, itum, *enter*.

ineptus, a, um, *unsuitable, silly*.

infāns, ntis, *infant, babe, minor, youthful*.

infelix, icis, *unhappy*.

inferior, ius, *lower, inferior*.

infigō, 3. fixī, flictum, *deal, inflict upon*.

ingenium, ī, *genius, character*.

ingēns, ntis, *huge, great*.

ingrātus, a, um, *ungrateful*.

inhaerēō, 2. hēsī, hēsūm, *stick in*.

inhumātus, a, um, *unburied*.

inimicitia, ae, *enmity*.

inimicus, a, um, *unfriendly*; subst., *enemy, adversary*.

inīquus, a, um, *unfair, unjust*.

injicio (Iniciō), 3. jēcī, jectum, *throw into, on, put into*; furōrem injicere, *enrage*; rixam injicere, *start a quarrel*.

injūria, ae, *wrong*.

innocēns, ntis, *innocent*.

inopia, ae, *want, neediness*.

inops, opis, *needy*; inops cōsiliī, *at his wits' end*.

inquam, quoth I; inquit, quoth he; inquit, say they.

inscribō, 3. scripsī, scriptum, *write on, inscribe*. [hop up upon.]

insiliō, 4. siluī, sultum, *leap upon*.

institutō, 3. uī, ūtum, *establish, institute, set on foot, get up*.

instō, 1. stitī, —, *press hard*.

insula, ae, *island*.

inum, esse, fuī, *be in*.

intelligō, 3. lexī, lēctum, *understand*.

inter, among.

interficiō, 3. fēcī, fectum, *kill*.

interimō, 3. ēmī, emptum, *make away with, kill*. [death.]

interitus, ūs, *destruction, perdition*,

interrogātum, ī, *question*.

interrogō, 1. *ask*.

intersum, esse, fuī, *to be present*; interest, *it concerns*.

interveniō, 4. vēnī, ventum, *come in between, intervene*.

intimus, a, um, *inmost, intimate*.

intrā, prep. w. Acc., *within*.

intrō, 1. *enter*. [duce.]

intrōdūcō, 3. duxī, ductum, *introduce*.

intrōgredior, 3. gressus sum, *step in*.

intrōmittō, 3. mīsī, missum, *let in*.

inultus, a, um, *unavenged*.

inūsitātus, a, um, *unusual*.

inūtilis, e, *useless, good for nothing*.

inveniō, 4. vēnī, ventum, *find*.

invidia, ae, *envy, evil eye*.

invitātiō, ōnis, f., *invitation*.

invitō, 1. *invite*.

invītus, a, um, *unwilling*.

invocō, 1. *call on, invoke*.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self*.

ira, ae, *anger*.

irātus, a, um, *angry, in anger*.

irritus, a, um (not valid), *of no avail*.

irrupō, 3. rūpī, ruptum, *burst into, come down upon, make inroad*.

is, ea, id, he, she, it; that.

iste, ista, istud, *that (of yours)*.

ita, so; nōn ita, *not so, not quite*.

itaque, *and so, consequently*.

iter, itineris, n., *way, journey, road, route*.

iterum, *again*.

## J.

Jaceō, 2. uī, —, *lie (prostrate)*.

jacīō, 3. jēcī, jactum, *throw*.

jactō, 1. *toss, brag of*.

jam, *already, by this time, now, anon*.

Jāsō, ōnis, *Jason, a hero*.

jubeō, 2. jussī, jussum, *bid, order*.

jūcundus, a, um, *pleasant, sweet, amusing*.

jūdex, icis, *judge, jurymen*.

jūdicium, ī, *sentence, judgment, court, trial*.

jūdicō, 1. *judge, think.*  
 jugulō, 1. *cut the throat, murder.*  
 jungō, 3. junxi, junctum, *join, form.*  
 Jūnō, ōnis, *consort of Jupiter.*  
 Jūpiter, Jovis, *supreme god.*  
 jūs, jūris, n., *right, court.*  
 juvenis, is, *youth (young man).*  
 juventūs, ūtis, f., *youth (period of life).*

## L.

Labor, ōris, m., *toil, labor.*  
 labōrō, 1. *toil, strain, suffer. work hard.* [Sparta.]  
 Lacedaemō, ōnis, *Lacedaemon,*  
 Lacedaemoniī, ōrum, *Lacedaemonians.*  
 Lacō, ōnis, *Lacedaemonian.*  
 lacrima, ae, *tear.*  
 lacrimo, 1. *weep.*  
 lacus, ūs, *lake.*  
 laedō, 3. sī, sum, *wound, insult.*  
 laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful.* [left.]  
 laevus, a, um, *left; laevā, to the*  
 lambō, 3. lambī, —, *lick.*  
 lāmentor, 1. *make lamentation.*  
 laniātus, ūs, *mangling.*  
 laqueus, ī, *snare, toils.*  
 latebra, ae, *hiding place.* [places.]  
 latebrōsus, a, um, *full of hiding*  
 lateō, 2. ūī, —, *to lie hid.*  
 latibulum, ī, *covert, den.*  
 latrātus, ūs, *barking.*  
 latrō, ōnis, *robber.*  
 latrunculus, ī, *piece (at draughts).*  
 lātus, a, um, *broad.*  
 laudō, 1. *praise.*  
 laus, laudis, f., *praise.* [read.]  
 legō, 3. lēgī, lectum, *gather, choose,*  
 lēniter, *gently.*  
 leō, ōnis, *lion.*  
 levis, e, *light, slight.*  
 levō, 1. *lighten, alleviate, relieve.*  
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law, condition.*  
 libenter, *willingly; libenter lūdi-*  
 ficor, *I like to fool.*  
 liber, brī, *book.*  
 liberātor, ōris, *liberator.*  
 liberō, 1. *set free.*  
 libertās, ātis, f., *freedom.*  
 libet, *it pleases, you would like.*  
 ligō, ōnis, m., *mattock.*

lignus, a, um, *wooden, of wood.*  
 lignum, ī, *wood, log.*  
 limus, ī, *mud.*  
 lingua, ae, *tongue.*  
 linteum, ī, *linen cloth.*  
 litigō, 1. *contend, wrangle.*  
 litus, oris, n., *shore.*  
 locō, 1. *let.* [(of a book).]  
 locus, ī, *place, opportunity, passage*  
 longitūdō, inis, f., *length.* [far.]  
 longus, a, um, *long; adv., longē,*  
 loquor, 3. locūtus sum, *speak, talk.*  
 lōrum, ī, *thong; lōris caedere,*  
*thrash.*  
 lucrum, ī, *gain, profit.*  
 luctor, 1. *wrestle.*  
 lūdō, 3. lūsī, lūsum, *play, mock.*  
 lūgeō, 2. luxī, —, *mourn.*  
 lupus, ī, *wolf.*  
 lusciniā, ae, *nightingale.*  
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light (of day); 1. clā-*  
 rissima, *broad day; primā lūce*  
*at dawn, daybreak.*

## M.

M. = Marcus.  
 magis, *more, rather.*  
 magister, trī, *teacher.*  
 magistrātus, ūs, *magistracy, official,*  
*government; magistrātum gerere,*  
*be in office.*  
 māgnānīmus, a, um, *great-hearted.*  
 māgnificus, a, um, *magnificent,*  
*grand.* [ness.]  
 māgnitūdō, inis, f., *bigness, great-*  
 māgnopere, *greatly.*  
 māgnus, a, um, *great, big, loud;*  
*superl., maximus.*  
 maledicō, 3. dixī, dictum (w. Dat.),  
*speak evil against, slander.*  
 mālō, mālī, mālūī, *wish rather,*  
*prefer.*  
 mālum, ī, *apple.*  
 malus, a, um, *bad, wicked, evil, poor;*  
 malum, ī, *an evil; adv. male,*  
*badly, ill.*  
 māne, *early in the morning.*  
 mānsuētus, a, um, *tame.*  
 manus, ūs, f., *hand, band.*  
 mare, is, n., *sea.*  
 māter, trīs, *mother, dam.*  
 mātrōna, ae, *lady.*

**maximē**, *most, especially.*  
**medēla**, *ae, remedy, cure, attendance.* [nursing.  
**medicīna**, *ae, medical attendance,*  
**medicus**, *i, physician.*  
**medium**, *i, middle.*  
**medius**, *a, um, middle, intervening.*  
**Megara**, *ae, city in Greece.*  
**membrum**, *i, limb, member.*  
**meminī**, *isse (defective verb), remember.*  
**memor**, *oris, mindful.*  
**memoria**, *ae, memory.*  
**mendāx**, *ācis, lying; subst., liar.*  
**Menelāus**, *i, husband of Helen.*  
**mēns**, *mentis, f., mind, understanding.*  
**mēnsis**, *is, m., month.*  
**mentiō**, *ōnis, f., mention.*  
**mentior**, *4. lie, lie and say.*  
**mentum**, *i, chin.*  
**mergō**, *3. mersi, mersum, plunge (under water).* [ern.  
**meridiānus**, *a, um, midday, south-meritum, i, desert.*  
**metuō**, *3. uī, —, fear.*  
**metus**, *ūs, fear.* [my.  
**meus**, *a, um (voc. masc., mī), mine,*  
**miles**, *itis, soldier.*  
**minimē**, *by no means, no.*  
**ministerium**, *i, service.*  
**minor**, *us, less, smaller, decreasing; m. nātū, younger.*  
**mīrificus**, *a, um, marvellous.*  
**mīrus**, *a, um, strange, marvellous.*  
**miser**, *era, erum, wretched, miserable, sad, poor; adv., miserē, pitifully, sadly.*  
**misereor**, *2. (with Gen.), pity.*  
**miseria**, *ae, misery, wretchedness.*  
**mitigō**, *1. soothe, soften.*  
**mītis**, *e, mild.*  
**mittō**, *3. mīsi, missum, send, loose; Iram mittere, cease to be angry.*  
**modo**, *only; nōn modo—sed etiam, not only—but also.*  
**modus**, *i, measure, manner, way.*  
**moenia**, *ium, pl., (city) walls.*  
**molestus**, *a, um, troublesome.*  
**moneō**, *2. remind, advise, warn.*  
**mōns**, *montis, m., mountain.*  
**mōnstrō**, *1. show.*  
**moribundus**, *a, um, dying.*

**morior**, *3. mortuus sum, die.*  
**mors**, *mortis, f., death.*  
**mortifer**, *era, erum, deadly, fatal.*  
**mortuus**, *a, um, dead.*  
**mōs**, *mōris, m., custom, way.*  
**mōtus**, *ūs, movement, motion.*  
**moveō**, *2. mōvi, mōtum, move, excite.*  
**mox**, *presently, by and by.*  
**mulcō**, *1. maul.*  
**mulier**, *eris, woman.*  
**multitūdō**, *inis, f., multitude, crowd.*  
**multus**, *a, um, much; multō post, long after.*  
**murmur**, *uris, n., murmur.*  
**murmurō**, *1. murmur.*  
**mūs**, *mūris, c., mouse.*  
**musca**, *ae, fly.*  
**mūsculus**, *i, little mouse.*  
**mūtō**, *1. change.*  
**mūtuus**, *a, um, mutual.*  
**Mycēnae**, *ārum, pl., city in Greece.*  
**Myndii**, *ōrum, Myndians.*

## N.

**Nam**, *namque, for.*  
**nanciscor**, *3. nactus sum, attain.*  
**narrō**, *1. tell.*  
**nascor**, *3. nātus sum, be born.*  
**nāsus**, *i, nose.*  
**natō**, *1. swim.*  
**nātū**, *by birth; mājor, maximus n., elder, eldest; minimus n., youngest.*  
**nātūra**, *ae, nature.*  
**nātūrālis**, *e, natural.*  
**nauta**, *ae, sailor.*  
**nāvigō**, *1. sail.*  
**nāvis**, *is, f., ship.*  
**nē**, *in order that not, lest; nē—quidem, not even; -nē = interparticle (133).*  
**nec**, *neque, neither, and not.*  
**necō**, *1. kill, slay.*  
**negō**, *1. deny, say that not.*  
**negōtium**, *i, business, trouble.*  
**nēmō**, *inis, nobody.* [of means.  
**nēquāquam**, *nowise, by no manner*  
**neque**, *neither, and not; neque—neque, neither—nor.*  
**Nerō**, *ōnis, name of a dog.*  
**nēsciō**, *4. not know.*



neuter, tra, trum, *neither*.  
 nidus, ī, *nest*.  
 nihil, *nothing*; adv., *not at all*.  
 nimius, a, um, *too great, excessive, too much*.  
 nisi, *if not, except, unless*.  
 nix, nivis, f., *snow*.  
 nōbilis, e, *noble, highborn, famous*.  
 noceō, 2. (with Dat.) *do harm*.  
 nōdus, ī, *knot*.  
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*.  
 nōmen, inis, n., *name*.  
 nōminō, 1. *call by name*.  
 nōn, *not*.  
 nōndum, *not yet*.  
 nōnne, *not ? (130)*.  
 nōnnulli, ae, a, *some*.  
 nōnus, a, um, *ninth*.  
 nōscitō, 1. *recognize*.  
 nōscō, 3. nōvī, nōtum, *learn to know*; nōvī, pf., *I know*.  
 nōster, stra, strum, *our*.  
 novus, a, um, *new*.  
 nox, noctis, f., *night*.  
 nūbō, 3. nupsī, nuptum (with Dat.), *marry (of the woman)*.  
 nullus, a, um, *none*.  
 num = inter. particle (see 130).  
 nūmen, inis, n., *divinity, divine will*.  
 numerō, 1. *count, account*.  
 numerus, ī, *number*.  
 nunc, *now*.  
 nūntiō, 1. *announce*.  
 nūntius, ī, *message, news, messenger*.  
 nunquam, *never*. [riage.  
 nuptiae, ārum, pl., *wedding, marriage*.  
 nusquam, *nowhere*.  
 nūtus, ūs, *nod, wink*.  
 nux, nucis, f., *nut*.

## O.

Ob, *on account of*.  
 oboediō, 4. (with Dat.), *obey*.  
 obruō, 3. ruī, rūtum, *overwhelm, cover*.  
 obscūrus, a, um, *dark, obscure*.  
 obsecrō, 1. *adjure*.  
 obsum, esse, fui (w. Dat.), *be in the way of, do harm, injure*. [tain.  
 obtineō, 2. tinuī, tentum, *hold, ob-*  
 obtingō, 3. tigiī, —, *fall to*.

obvius, a, um, *meeting*.  
 occāsus, ūs, *setting*; sōlis occāsū, *at sunset*.  
 occidō, 3. cidi, cīsum, *kill, slay*.  
 occurrō, 3. curri, cursum, *run to meet, meet*.  
 octo, *eight*.  
 octōgēsimus, a, um, *eightieth*.  
 oculus, ī, *eye*.  
 offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *offer, expose*. [in the light of.  
 officiō, 3. fēcī, fectum (w. Dat.), *stand*  
 officium, ī, *duty, office, service*.  
 ōlim, *once on a time*.  
 omnīnō, *generally, at all*.  
 omnis, e, *all*.  
 onus, eris, n., *burden, load*.  
 opera, ae, *pains, trouble, work, job*;  
 operam dare, *endeavor*; operā, *by means*.  
 opīmus, a, um, *rich, fat*.  
 oppidum, ī, *town*. [resources.  
 (ops) opis, f., *power, help, riches*,  
 optimus, super. of bonus, *excellent*.  
 opus, eris, n., *work*.  
 opus est, *is wanted*.  
 ōrāculum, ī, *oracle*.  
 ōrātor, ōris, *orator, ambassador*.  
 ōrdō, inis, m., *row, rank, order*.  
 Orestēs, is, *son of Agamemnon*.  
 orior, 4. ortus sum, *rise, arise*.  
 ōrnāmentum, ī, *ornament, jewel*.  
 ōrnō, 1. *deck, adorn, dress up*.  
 ōrō, 1. *beg, beseech*.  
 ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face*.  
 os, ossis, n., *bone*.  
 ostendō, 3. ndī, nsum, *show*.  
 ostentō, 1. *make a show, brag, display*.  
 ōstium, ī, *door*.  
 ovis, is, f., *sheep*.

## P.

Pactum, ī, *bargain, manner, way*.  
 paene, *almost*.  
 paenitentia, ae, *repentance*.  
 palūs, ūdis, f., *swamp*.  
 parcō, 3. pepercī, parsum (with Dat.), *spare*.  
 parēns, tis, c., *parent*.  
 pāreō, 2. (with Dat.), *obey, be obedient to*.

- Paris, idis, son of Priam.  
 parō, 1. *prepare, make ready.*  
 Parrhasius, i, famous painter.  
 parricida, ae, c., *parricide.*  
 pars, partis, f., *part, portion; side*  
 (= party).  
 parum, but little, too little.  
 parvus, a, um, *small, little.*  
 parvulus, a, um, *poor, little.*  
 pascō, 3. pāvī, pastum, *feed, graze,*  
*tend; pass. (w. Abl.), eat, feed on.*  
 passer, eris, m., *sparrow.*  
 pāstor, ōris, *herdsman, shepherd.*  
 pāstorālis, e, *of a shepherd.*  
 patefaciō, 3. fēcī, factum, *disclose,*  
*reveal.*  
 pater, tris, *father.*  
 patior, 3. passus sum, *suffer.*  
 patria, ae, *native land.*  
 patrō, 1. *perform.*  
 paucus, a, um, *little, few.*  
 paulātim, *little by little.*  
 paulisper, *a little while.*  
 paulō, adv., *a little.*  
 paululum, *a little.*  
 pauper, eris, *poor.*  
 pavefaciō, 3. fēcī, factum, *frighten.*  
 pāvō, ōnis, m., *peacock.*  
 pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*  
 peccātum, i, *sin, fault.*  
 peccō, 1. *do wrong.*  
 pectus, oris, n., *breast.*  
 pecūnia, ae, *money.*  
 Pēleus, i, *a hero.*  
 pellis, is, f., *skin, fleece.*  
 pellō, 3. pepulī, pulsum, *drive,*  
*drive away, banish.*  
 Pelops, is, son of Tantalus.  
 pendeō, 2. pependī, —, *hang, be*  
*suspended.*  
 penitus, *thoroughly.*  
 penna, ae, *feather.*  
 per, *through.*  
 percussor, ōris, *murderer, assassin.*  
 percutiō, 3. cussī, cussum, *strike*  
*through, stab, smite, kill, punch.*  
 perdifficilis, e, *very hard (to do).*  
 perdō, 3. didī, ditum, *ruin, undo,*  
*lose.*  
 peregrinus, a, um, *foreign; subst.,*  
*foreigner.*  
 perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlā-  
 tum, *carry (all the way), endure.*
- perficiō, 3. fēcī, fectum, *complete,*  
*achieve.*  
 perfidus, a, um, *treacherous.*  
 perforō, 1. *pierce through, transfix.*  
 periclitōr, 1. *expose oneself to dan-*  
*ger, to be in jeopardy.*  
 periculum, i, *danger.*  
 permāgnus, a, um, *very great.*  
 permētiōr, 4. mēnsus sum, *meas-*  
*ure, traverse.*  
 permulceō, 2. mulsī, mulsum,  
*stroke.*  
 Persa, ae, *Persian.*  
 persevērō, 1. *persevere, insist.*  
 perspicīō, 3. spexī, spectrum, *see*  
*through, into.*  
 persuādeō, 2. suāsī, suāsum (w.  
 Dat.), *persuade, convince.*  
 pertaedet, pertaesum est, *it tires.*  
 perterreō, 2. *frighten thoroughly.*  
 pertineō, 2. uī, —, *extend, pertain.*  
 perveniō, 4. vēnī, ventum, *arrive.*  
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot, paw.*  
 petō, 3. petivī, petitum, *aim at,*  
*beg, go after, seek.*  
 petulāns, ntis, *saucy, petulant.*  
 phāsiānus, i, *pheasant.*  
 philosophus, i, *philosopher.*  
 Phylax, ācis (Greek for "guard"),  
*name of a dog.*  
 pictor, ōris, *painter.*  
 pictūra, ae, *painting.*  
 piger, gra, um, *lazy.*  
 pigritia, ae, *laziness.*  
 pingō, 3. pinxī, pictum, *paint.*  
 piscis, is, m., *fish.*  
 Pisō, ōnis, *a Roman proconsul.*  
 placeō, 2. (with Dat.), *please, suit.*  
 placidus, a, um, *quiet, calm.*  
 plācō, 1. *appease.*  
 plāga, ae, *blow, wound.*  
 plastrum, i, *wagon.*  
 plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people.*  
 plūs, plūris, *more; plūrēs, several.*  
 pōculum, i, *cup.*  
 poena, ae, *punishment, penalty;*  
*poenās dare, be punished.*  
 poēta, ae, *poet.*  
 pōmum, i, *apple, fruit.*  
 pōnō, 3. posuī, positum, *put, place,*  
*lay down, lay aside (dismiss).*  
 pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*  
 populus, i, *people.*



- porrigō, 3. porrexi, porrectum, reach forth, extend, hand.  
 porta, ae, gate.  
 portō, 1. carry.  
 possum, posse, potui, can, be able.  
 post, prep., after, behind; adv., afterwards.  
 posteā, after (that), afterwards.  
 posteri, ōrum, posterity; in posterum, for the future.  
 posterior, ius, after, later; postrēmō, finally.  
 postquam, posteāquam, after.  
 postridiē, the next day.  
 postulō, 1. claim, demand.  
 praebeō, 2. present, show, furnish, provide, lend.  
 praecipio, 3. cēpi, ceptum, prescribe, give instructions.  
 praeda, ae, booty, prey.  
 praedicō, 1. boast, extol, cry up.  
 praedō, ōnis, robber.  
 praemium, i, reward.  
 praeses, idis, president, chief.  
 praestō, 1. stiti, —, excel, perform.  
 praestō, adv., at hand; praestō esse (with Dat.), present oneself to, meet.  
 praeter, prep., beside, against, contrary to, above.  
 praetereā, besides.  
 praetereō, ire, ii, itum, pass by.  
 prātum, i, meadow.  
 precēs, um, pl., f., prayer.  
 premō, 3. pressi, pressum, press (hard).  
 pretiōsus, a, um, costly.  
 Priamus, i, King of Troy.  
 Priēnē, ēs, city in Asia Minor, home of Bias.  
 primus, a, um, first; primum, the first time; primō, at first.  
 princeps, ipis, first, chief, head man, prince.  
 prior, prius, former, before.  
 priusquam, before, sooner.  
 prō, for, instead of, in behalf of.  
 prō, interj., oh! ah!  
 probitās, ātis, f., honesty, uprightness.  
 probō, 1. approve, prove.  
 probus, a, um, honest, upright; probē, well, thoroughly.
- prōcēdō, 3. cessi, cessum, to step forth, advance.  
 prōcōsul, is, proconsul.  
 procul, at a distance.  
 prōcurrō, 3. curri, cursum, run forward, ahead.  
 prōdō, 3. didi, ditum, betray; memoriā prōditum est, there is a tradition.  
 prōferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bring forth, put forth.  
 prōficiō, 3. fēci, fectum, accomplish, do good. [march.  
 proficiscor, 3. fectus sum, set out, profugiō, 3. fūgi, fugitum, flee (away).  
 profundus, a, um, deep.  
 prōgeniēs, ēi, descendants.  
 prohibeō, 2. hinder, keep from.  
 prōjiciō (prōciō), 3. jēci, jectum, cast forth, fling.  
 prōmittō, 3. mīsi, missum, promise.  
 prōmptus, a, um, ready; in linguā prōmptum, at the tongue's end.  
 prope, adv., near, nearly, almost; prep., hard by, near.  
 properē, hastily, in haste, speedily.  
 prōpōnō, 3. posui, positum, propose, exhibit.  
 propter, adv., hard by; prep., on account of.  
 prōsternō, 3. strāvī, strātum, throw flat.  
 prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī (with Dat.), do good.  
 prōtinus, forthwith.  
 prōvidus, a, um, foresighted.  
 prōvincia, ae, province.  
 proximus, a, um, next.  
 prūdēns, ntis, wise. [ty.  
 pūber, eris, marriageable, of puberpuella, ae, girl.  
 puer, eris, boy; puerulus, baby boy.  
 pūgiō, ōnis, m., dagger.  
 pūgna, ae, fight, battle.  
 pūgnō, 1. fight.  
 pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful, fine.  
 pulchritūdō, inis, f., beauty.  
 putō, 1. think, suppose.  
 Pyladēs, is, friend of Orestes.  
 Pūthius, i, the Pythian, i. e., Apollo, god of Prophecy.

## Q.

Quaerō, 3. quaesivī, quaesitum, ask, seek, search.

quaesō, prithēe.

quam, as, how, than.

quanquam, although.

quantō—tantō, by as much as—by so much; the—the. [as.]

quantus, a, um, how much, as much

quārē, why.

quartus, a, um, fourth.

quasi, as if, as it were.

quatiō, 3. (quassī), quassum, shake.

quattuor, four.

que, and.

querēla, ae, complaint.

quī, quae, quod, who, which.

quī, how.

quīa, because.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), a certain, a.

quidem, true, indeed, at any rate; nē—quidem, not even. [sleep.]

quiēscō, 3. quiēvī, quiētum, rest,

quiētus, a, um, quiet.

quiēpe, for.

quis? quid? who? what? quid? [why?]

quis, qua, quid, any. [pray?]

quisnam, quidnam, who? what,

quisquam, quidquam, any at all.

quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque, each.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis), any one you please.

quod, because, that, in that.

quōmodo, how.

quoniam, since, as indeed.

quoque (postpositive), also.

quot, how many.

quotidiānus, a, um, daily.

quotidiē (cotidiē), daily.

## R.

Rādō, 3. rāsī, rāsum, scrape, shave.

rāmōsus, a, um, branchy.

rāna, ae, frog.

rapidus, a, um, rapid.

ratus, a, um, thinking.

recēdō, 3. cessī, cessum, withdraw, retreat, recede.

recipiō, 3. cēpī, ceptum, take back,

get back, undertake, receive; sē recipere, withdraw.

recitō, 1. read aloud, recite.

recōgnitiō, ōnis, f., recognition.

reconciliō, 1. restore, gain, win back, reconcile. [hide.]

recondō, 3. condidī, conditum, rectē, rightly.

recubō, 1. —, lie, recline.

recumbō, 3. cubuī, cubitum, lie back, down again, recline.

recuperō, 1. recover.

recūsō, 1. refuse.

reddō, 3. reddidī, redditum, give back, render, restore, return, repeat.

redeō, ire, iī, itum, return.

reditus, ūs, return.

redux, ducis, returned.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, bring back, refer, report.

rēgālis, e, royal, regal.

rēgius, a, um, royal.

rēgnō, 1. reign. [ion.]

rēgnum, ī, kingdom, throne, domin-

rējicīō (rēicīō), 3. jēcī, jectum, reject, throw back.

relinquō, 3. liquī, lictum, leave.

reliquus, a, um, remaining, rest (of).

remedium, ī, remedy.

remōtus, a, um, remote.

removeō, 2. mōvī, mōtum, remove. repente, suddenly.

reperiō, 4. repperī, repertum, find.

repetō, 3. petivī, petītum, repeat, fetch back. [task, rebuke.]

reprehendō, ndī, nsum, 3. take to

reputō, 1. take into consideration, think over.

requirō, 3. quisivī, quisitum, to seek again, require, hunt up, ask.

rēs, rei, thing; rē vērā, in truth.

respondeō, 2. spondī, spōnsum, answer.

respōnsum, ī, answer.

rēspūblica, reipūblīcae, republic, commonwealth.

restituō, 3. uī, ūtum, restore, right.

restō, 1. stitī, —, remain.

retrosum, backward.

revellō, 3. vellī (vulsī), vulsum, pluck off, up. [sum], return.

revertor, 3. revertī (reversus

revinciō, 4. vinxi, vinctum, *tie.*  
 revocō, 1. recall.  
 rēx, rēgis, *king.*  
 Rhodus, ī, f., *Rhodes, island in the  
 Aegean Sea; Rhodii, ōrum,  
 Rhodians.*  
 rideō, 2. risi, risum, *laugh (at).*  
 ridiculus, a, um, *ridiculous, laugh-  
 able.*  
 ripa, ae, *bank.*  
 risus, ūs, *laughter.*  
 ritus, ūs, *use, custom, fashion.*  
 rivulus, ī, *brook.*  
 rixa, ae, *quarrel.*  
 rixor, 1. *quarrel, squabble.*  
 rōdō, 3. rōsi, rōsum, *gnaw.*  
 rogō, 1. *ask.*  
 rōstrum, ī, *beak.*  
 ruber, bra, brum, *red.*  
 rudō, 3. ivi, itum, *roar, bray.*  
 rūs, rūris, n., *country; rūs, into  
 the country; rūrē, from the coun-  
 try; rūrī(e), in the country.*  
 rūsticus, a, um, *rustic; subst.,  
 countryman, peasant.*

## S.

Sacer, cra, crum, *sacred; sacra  
 facere, sacrifice; Sacer Mōns,  
 Sacred Mount.*  
 sacerdōs, ōtis, c., *priest, priestess.*  
 saepe, *often; comp., saepius.*  
 saeviō, 4. *rage, be rampant, run  
 wild, riot.*  
 sagitta, ae, *arrow.*  
 saliō, 4. salui, saltum, *leap.*  
 saltō, 1. *leap, dance.*  
 saltus, ūs, *leap.* [ty,  
 salūs, ūtis, f., *welfare, rescue, safe-*  
 salūtō, 1. *salute.*  
 salvē, *hail, (how d'ye).*  
 sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*  
 saniēs, ēi, *matter, venom, slaver.*  
 sapiēns, ntis, *wise; sapienter,  
 wisely.*  
 sapientia, ae, *wisdom.*  
 satis, *enough; satius, better.*  
 schola, ae, *school.*  
 sciō, 4. *know.*  
 scribō, 3. scripsi, scriptum, *write.*  
 Scytha, ae, *Scythian.*  
 sēcēdō, 3. cessi, cessum, *withdraw.*

secūris, is (acc. im.), f., *axe.*  
 sed, *but.*  
 sedeō, 2. sēdi, sessum, *sit.*  
 sēditio, ōnis, f., *sedition.*  
 sēgnis, e, *sluggish.*  
 semper, *always.*  
 sempiternus, a, um, *eternal.*  
 senectūs, ūtis, f., *old age.*  
 senex, senis, *old man.*  
 sēnsim, *gradually.*  
 sentiō, 4. sēnsi, sēnsum, *feel, per-  
 ceive, be aware of.*  
 sermō, ōnis, m., *speech, conversa-  
 tion, language.*  
 sērō, *late, too late.*  
 sērus, a, um, *late, too late.*  
 serviō, 4. (with Dat.), *be a slave to.*  
 servō, 1. *preserve, save, keep.*  
 servus, ī, *slave.*  
 sestertius, ī, *sesterce.*  
 seu (sive), *or.*  
 sevērus, a, um, *stern.*  
 sī, *if.*  
 sic, *so.*  
 siccō, 1. *dry.*  
 significō, 1. *signify.* [standard.  
 signum, ī, *sign, image, statue,*  
 sileō, 2. uī, —, *be silent.*  
 silva, ae, *wood, forest.* [manner.  
 similis, e, *like; similiter, in like*  
 simius, ī, *monkey. ape.*  
 Simōnidēs, is, *a famous poet.*  
 simul, *at the same time; simulac,  
 atque, as soon as.*  
 simulō, 1. *feign, make believe, sham.*  
 sine, *without.*  
 singuli, ae, a, *each, one by one.*  
 sinister, tra, trum, *left.*  
 sinō, 3. sivi, situm, *allow.*  
 sitiō, 4. *thirst.*  
 situs, a, um, *situated.*  
 sive (seu), *or.*  
 societās, ātis, f., *partnership.*  
 socius, ī, *partner, companion, ally.*  
 sodālis, is, c., *companion.*  
 sōl, is, m., *sun, sunshine.*  
 soleō, 2. solitus sum, *be accus-  
 tomed, in the habit.*  
 sōlitūdō, inis, f., *solitude, solitary  
 place, wilderness.*  
 solium, ī, *throne.*  
 Solō, ōnis, *Solon, Athenian law-  
 giver and sage.*



sōlus, a, um, *alone*.  
 solvō, 3. solvī, solūtum, *loosen, cast off, pay*.  
 somnium, ī, *dream*. [*dream*.  
 somnus, ī, *sleep*; in somnis, *in a dream*.  
 sonitus, ūs, }  
 sonus, ī, } *sound*.  
 soror, ōris, *sister*. [*scatter*.  
 spargō, 3. sparsī, sparsum, *sprinkle*.  
 Sparta, ae, *Sparta*.  
 Spartānus, a, um, *Spartan*.  
 spatium, ī, *space*.  
 spectātor, ōris, *beholder*.  
 spectō, 1. behold, look at, to, look and see.  
 specus, ūs, *cave*.  
 spēlunca, ae, *cave*.  
 spērō, 1. *hope*.  
 spēs, eī, *hope*.  
 sponte (suā), of one's own accord.  
 stabulum, ī, *stall, roost, house*.  
 stāgnum, ī, *pond*. [*once*.  
 statim, *immediately, forthwith, at once*.  
 stercus, oris, n., *dung*. [*head*.  
 stipes, itis, m. (*stake, stick*), *block-stirps, pis, f. (stock), splinter*.  
 stō, 1. steti (stātūrus), *stand*.  
 stolidus, a, um, *stupid*.  
 stultitia, ae, *folly*. [*pid*.  
 stultus, a, um (*dull*), *foolish, stupidus, a, um, stupid*.  
 sturnus, ī, *starling*.  
 suādeō, 2. suāsī, suāsum, *advise*.  
 suāvis, e, *sweet, pleasant*; suāviter, *adv.*  
 sub, *under, near*. [*ashore*.  
 subducō, 3. duxī, ductum, *haul up*.  
 subinde, *immediately, thereupon, from time to time*. [*adv.*  
 subitus, a, um, *sudden*; subitō, *subject, add, rejoin*.  
 subveniō, 4. vēnī, ventum (w. Dat.), *come to aid of*.  
 suffocō, 1. *throttle, choke, drown*.  
 suffrāgium, ī, *vote*.  
 suggerō, 3. gessī, gestum, *supply, bring a supply of*.  
 summus, a, um, *highest, top, greatest, chief, supreme*; summa aqua, *surface of the water*.  
 sūmō, 3. sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take (take on oneself), undertake*.

super, prep., *over, above, about*.  
 superbus, a, um, *proud, haughty*.  
 superior, us, *upper, having the upper hand*.  
 superō, 1, *surpass, overcome*.  
 suppliciter, *suppliantly*.  
 supplicium, ī, *punishment (capital), execution, death*; suppliciō afficere, *put to death*.  
 suprā, adv., *above, on the top*; prep., *above, over*.  
 surgō, 3. surrexī, surrectum, *rise, get up*.  
 surripio, 3. ripuī, reptum, *filch, steal*.  
 suspendō, 3. pendī, pēsum, *hang up, hold hanging, suspend*.  
 suspiciō, ōnis, f., *suspicion*.  
 suspirium, ī, *sigh*.  
 suus, a, um, *his, her, its (own), of his, her, its own*.

## T.

Taberna, ae, *inn*.  
 tābescō, 3. tābuī, —, *pine away*.  
 tabula, ae, *tablet*; t. picta, *picture*.  
 taciturnitās, ātis, f., *silence, mum-ness*.  
 taciturnus, a, um, *taciturn*.  
 tālis, e, *such*.  
 tam, *so*.  
 tamen, *nevertheless, yet*.  
 tandem, *at length*; pray.  
 tangō, 3. tetigī, tactum, *touch*.  
 tanquam, *as if*.  
 tantum, tantummodo, *only*.  
 tantus, a, um, *so great, so much*.  
 taurus, ī, *bull*.  
 tectum, ī, *roof, house, dwelling*.  
 tegō, 3. texī, tectum, *cover*.  
 temerē, *rashly, without thinking*.  
 temperantia, ae, *moderation, self-control*.  
 tempestās, ātis, f., *season, weather, storm*.  
 templum, ī, *temple*.  
 tempus, oris, n., *time*; t. adversum, *adversity*.  
 tenāx, ācis, *tenacious, tough*.  
 teneō, 2. uī, tentum, *hold*; memoriā t., *remember*.

tentō, 1. *try, put to test.*  
 tenuis, e, *thin, slight, trifling.*  
 terra, ae, *earth, land.*  
 terreō, 2. *frighten, scare.*  
 terrificus, a, um, *terrific, dreadful.*  
 tertius, a, um, *third; tertium,*  
*third time.*  
 testāmentum, ī, *will.*  
 testimōnium, ī, *witness; t. dicere,*  
*bear witness.*  
 testis, is, c., *witness.*  
 thēsaurus, ī, *treasure, treasury.*  
 Thetis, idis, *mother of Achilles.*  
 Thrasō, ōnis, *a braggart.*  
 timeō, 2. uī, —, *fear.*  
 timidus, a, um, *fearful, timid.*  
 timor, ōris, m., *fear.*  
 tintinnābulum, ī, *bell.*  
 tollō, 3. sustulī, sublātum, *lift up,*  
*extol, elevate, take away, set up,*  
*take up.*  
 torreō, 2. torruī, tostum, *parch.*  
 tot, *so many.*  
 tōtus, a, um, *whole.*  
 tractō, 1. *handle, feel, paw, treat.*  
 trādō, 3. didi, ditum, *hand over,*  
*deliver, hand down.*  
 trahō, 3. traxī, tractum, *draw,*  
*drag, detain; bellum t., prolong*  
*war.*  
 trājiciō, 3. (trānsj.), jēcī, jectum,  
*put, throw across, cross, slab.*  
 tranquillitās, ātis, f., *calm, calm-*  
*ness.*  
 trāns, prep., w. Acc., *over, across.*  
 trānseō, 4. īi, itum, *cross, pass by.*  
 trānsportō, 1. *carry across, over.*  
 trepidō, 1. *be agitated, frightened.*  
 trēs, tria, *three.*  
 tribūnus, ī, *tribune.*  
 tribuō, 3. uī, ūtum, *award.*  
 triduum, ī (*space of*) *three days.*  
 triennium, ī (*space of*) *three years.*  
 Trōja, ae, *Troy.*  
 Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan.*  
 truncus, ī, *trunk, log.*  
 tueor, 2. tuitus (tūtātus) sūm (136),  
*behold, protect.*  
 tum, tunc, *then.*  
 turba, ae, *disturbance, crowd.*  
 tūtus, a, um, *safe.*  
 tuus, a, um, *thine.*  
 tyrannus, ī, *tyrant.*

## U.

Ubi, *where, when, if.*  
 ubique, *everywhere.*  
 ulciscor, 3. ultus sum, *take (one's)*  
*vengeance on, avenge.*  
 ullus, a, um, *any.*  
 ultimus, a, um, *last.*  
 ultrā, *beyond.*  
 umbra, ae, *shade, shadow.*  
 umbrāculum, ī, *shady place.*  
 umerus, ī, *shoulder.*  
 ūnā, *together.*  
 unda, ae, *wave.*  
 unde, *whence.*  
 unguis, is, m., *nail, claw, talon.*  
 ūnicus, a, um, *only.*  
 unquam, *ever.*  
 ūnus, a, um, *one, only.*  
 urbs, urbis, f., *city.*  
 ūrō, 3. ūssi, ūstum, *burn.*  
 ursus, ī, *bear.*  
 usque (ad.), *until.*  
 ut, utī, *how, as; that, in order that.*  
 uter, tra, trum, *which of the two.*  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, *either,*  
*both.*  
 ūtilis, e, *useful.*  
 utinam, *would that, see 92, 3.*  
 ūtor, 3. ūsus sum (w. Abl.), *use,*  
*avail oneself of, enjoy, have.*  
 ūva, ae, *grape.*  
 uxor, ōris, *wife.*

## V.

Vacca, ae, *cow.*  
 valeō, 2. *be well, strong; valē*  
*(imper.), farewell.*  
 validus, a, um, *strong.*  
 vānus, a, um, *vain.*  
 vehemēns, ntis, *violent; adv., ve-*  
*hementer, soundly, violently,*  
*sore. [pass., ride, drive.*  
 vehō, 3. vexī, vectum, *carry;*  
*vel, or, even.*  
 vēlōx, ōcis, *fleet. [cēre, to hunt.*  
 vēnātiō, ōnis, f., *hunt; v-m exer-*  
*vēnātor, ōris, hunter.*  
 venēnum, ī, *poison, venom.*  
 venia, ae, *permission, pardon; ve-*  
*niam dare, forgive.*  
 veniō, 4. vēnī, ventum, *come.*  
 vēnor, 1. *hunt, catch.*



venter, tris, m., belly.  
 Venus, ěris, goddess of Love.  
 verbera, um, pl., blows.  
 verberō, 1. lash, flog.  
 verbum, i, word.  
 vērō, truly, indeed; but.  
 vērus, a, um, true; — rē vērā, really, in truth.  
 vesperāscō, 3. vesperāvī, —, become evening.  
 vespertiliō, ōnis, m., bat.  
 vestigium, i, trace, track, footprint.  
 vestis, is, f., clothing, dress, garment.  
 vetō, 1. uī, itum, forbid.  
 vetulus, i, (poor) old man; vetula, ae, old crone.  
 vetus, eris, old.  
 via, ae, way.  
 viātor, ōris, wayfarer, traveller.  
 vicēsimus, a, um, twentieth.  
 vicinus, i, neighbor.  
 victor, ōris, m., conqueror.  
 victōria, ae, victory.  
 victus, ūs, food, mode of living.  
 vicus, i, village.  
 videlicet, to wit, you see.  
 videō, 2. vidī, vīsum, see; pass., seem, appear.  
 vigeō, 2. uī, —, be strong.  
 vīginti, twenty.  
 vinciō, 4. vinxī, vinctum, bind.  
 vincō, 3. vicī, victum, conquer, overcome, vanquish.

vindicō, 1. claim, save.  
 vir, virī, man, husband.  
 virga, ae, rod.  
 virgō, inis, virgin.  
 virgula, ae (fr. virga), rod.  
 virtūs, virtūtis, f, manliness, bravery, virtue, worth.  
 vis, vis, f., force, violence, quantity; pl., virēs, virium, strength, forces; vim inferre, violate.  
 visitō, 1. visit.  
 vīsum, i, vision.  
 vīta, ae, life.  
 vitō, 1. avoid.  
 vituperō, 1. blame, abuse.  
 vivō, 3. vixī, victum, live.  
 vivus, a, um, living, alive.  
 vix, scarcely, hardly.  
 vocō, 1. call, bid, invite.  
 volō, velle, volui, will, wish, want.  
 volō, 1. fly.  
 volucris, is, m. and f., bird.  
 voluptās, ātis, f., pleasure.  
 vōx, vōcis, f., voice.  
 vulnus, eris, n., wound.  
 vulpēs, is, f., fox.  
 vultur, uris, m., vulture.  
 vultus, ūs, countenance.

Z.

Zeuxis, is (Acc. in), a famous painter.

II.—ENGLISH—LATIN.

Numerals refer to the sections.

A.

Able to be, possum.  
 about, dē, w. Abl.  
 abuse, maledicere, 113, 2; vituperāre. Subst., conviciūm, i.  
 accustomed, on a. of. propter, w. Acc.  
 accustomed to be, solēre; Perf., solitus sum.  
 admire, admirārī.  
 admit, concedere,mittere, 114, 2.

admonish, monēre, admonēre.  
 advantage, commodum, i.  
 advice, cōsilium, i.  
 affirm, affirmāre.  
 after, post, prep. w. Acc.  
 afterwards, post, postea.  
 again, iterum.  
 aid, auxilium, i.  
 air, āer, āeris, m.  
 Alexander, Alexander, drī.  
 all, omnis, e; cūctus, a, um.

alone, *sōlus*, *a*, *um*, 85.  
 already, *jam*.  
 also, *quoque* (postpositive).  
 altar, *āra*, *ae*.  
 always, *semper*.  
 am, *sum*.  
 ancient, *antiquus*, *a*, *um*.  
 and, *et*, *-que*, *atque*. [irāscī.  
 angry, *irātus*, *a*, *um*; get angry,  
 animal, *animal*, *is*, *n.*; *bestia*, *ae*.  
 another, *alius*, *alter*, 85.  
 answer, *respondere*, 120, 2.  
 any, *ullus*, *a*, *um*, 85; *quīvis* (any  
 you choose), *quisquam* (any at  
 all), 129.  
 apple, *mālum*, *ī*; *pōmum*, *ī*.  
 approach to, *appropinquare*; *accē-  
 dere*, 114, 2 (*ad w. Acc.*).  
 arms, *arma*, *ōrum*, *n. pl.*  
 army, *exercitus*, *ūs*.  
 arrange, *cōstituere*, 115.  
 arrival, *adventus*, *ūs*.  
 arrow, *sagitta*, *ae*.  
 art, *ars*, *artis*, *f.*  
 artist, *artifex*, *icis*.  
 as (= since), *cum*, 96, 2.  
 ashes, *cinis*, *eris*, *m.*  
 ask (ask for), *petere*, 120, 3; *rogāre*,  
*postulāre*; (question), *quaerere*,  
 120, 3, *interrogāre*.  
 ass, *asinus*, *ī*; *asellus*, *ī*.  
 Athenian, *Athēniēnsis*, *e*.  
 Athens, *Athēnae*, *ūrum*, *pl.*  
 attach, *annectere*, 113, 2.  
 attack, *impetus*, *ūs*.  
 augur, *augur*, *is*.  
 author, *auctor*, *ōris*.  
 avoid, *vitāre*, *evitāre*.  
 award, *tribuere*, 115.  
 aware, *cōsciūs*, *a*, *um*.  
 axe, *secūris*, *is* (*Acc. im*), *f.*

## B.

Baby, *infāns*, *tis*, *c.*  
 back, *dorsum*, *ī*.  
 backward, *retrosum*.  
 bad, *malus*, *a*, *um*; *improbus*, *a*, *um*.  
 bark at, *allatrāre*, *w. Acc.*  
 bat, *vespertiliō*, *ōnis*, *m.*  
 battle, *pūgna*, *ae*; *aciēs*, *ēī* (line of  
 battle).  
 be, *esse*.

bear to, *ferre*, 150, (carry) *portāre*;  
 (endure) *perferre*.  
 beast, *bestia*, *ae*; *bēlva*, *ae* (great  
 beast).  
 beat, *verberāre*.  
 beautiful, *pulcher*, *chra*, *chrum*,  
*formōsus*, *a*, *um*.  
 because, *quod*, *quia*.  
 bed, *lectus*, *ī*.  
 before, *ante*, *prep. w. Acc.*  
 beg, *orāre*, *rogāre*, *petere*, 120, 3.  
 begin, *incipere*, 112, 1; *coepisse*.  
 believe, *credere*, 115.  
 bell, *tintinnūbulum*, *ī*. [113, 2.  
 bell to, *tintinnūbulum annectere*,  
 bend, *flectere*, 113, 2.  
 besiege, *obsidēre*, 120, 2.  
 best, *optimus*, *a*, *um*.  
 betray, *prodere*, 115.  
 between, *inter*, *w. Acc.*  
 bird, *avis*, *is*, *f.*  
 biting (sharp), *acer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.  
 bitter, *amārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 blame, *reprehendere*, 114, 1, *vitu-  
 perāre*. [m. (b. shed).  
 blood, *sanguis*, *inis*, *m.*; *cruor*, *ōris*,  
 blows, *verbera*, *um*, *n. pl.*  
 boast, *glōriārī*, *jactāre*, *praedicāre*.  
 body, *corpus*, *oris*, *n.*  
 bone, *os*, *ossis*, *n.*  
 book, *liber*, *brī*, *m.*  
 booty, *praeda*, *ae*. [nātus.  
 born to be, *nāscī*, 136, 3; born,  
 boy, *puer*, *ī*; little b., *puerulus*, *ī*.  
 braggart, *Thrasō*, *ōnis*.  
 brave, *fortis*, *e*.  
 bravery, *fortitūdō*, *inis*, *f.*  
 breeze, *aura*, *ae*.  
 bridge, *pōns*, *tis*, *m.*  
 bring, *ferre*, 150, *afferre*, *appor-  
 tāre*; *addūcere*, 113, 2 (lead);  
 bring back, *referre*; bring up,  
*efferre*; *īducāre* (educate).  
 broad, *lātus*, *a*, *um*; broad day,  
*clārissima lūx*.  
 brother, *frāter*, *tris*.  
 bull, *taurus*, *ī*.  
 burden, *onus*, *eris*, *n.*  
 but, *sed*; *autem* (postpositive), *vē-  
 rum*, *at*; (only), *tantum*, *modo*,  
*solum*.  
 buy, *emere*.  
 by, *ab*, *ā*, *w. Abl.*

## C.

Caesar, *Caesar*, *is*.  
 call, *vocāre*; call on, *invocāre*; call out, *evocāre*; call together, *convocāre*.  
 can (I), *possum*, 145.  
 Canius, *Canius*, *ī*.  
 care, *cūra*, *ae*.  
 careful, *diligēns*, *tis*.  
 careless, *incautus*, *a*, *um*.  
 caresses, *blanditiae*, *arum*, *pl*.  
 carpenter, *faber*, *bri*.  
 carry, *ferre*, 150, *portāre*; carry away, *auferre*, *asportāre*; carry on, *gerere*, 115; carry out, *exsequi*, 136, 3.  
 Carthage, *Carthāgō*, *inis*.  
 cat, *fēlēs*, *is*, *f*.  
 catch, *capere*; catch sight of, *cōspicere*, 113, *Exc*.  
 cavalry, *equitēs*, *um*, *pl*.  
 cave, *specus*, *ūs*; *spelunca*, *ae*.  
 certain (one), *quidam*.  
 chance, *occāsio*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 change to, *mutāre*. [*um*.  
 charming, *dulcis*, *e*; *jucundus*, *a*,  
 chastise, *castigāre*.  
 cheat, *fraudāre*, *fallere*, 115. [*pl*.  
 children (of parents), *liberī*, *ōrum*,  
 Cicero, *Cicerō*, *ōnis*.  
 citizen, *civis*, *is*, *c*.  
 city, *urbis*, *is*, *f*.  
 clamor, *clāmōr*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 cleanse, } *purgāre*.  
 clear, }  
 clothes, } *vestis*, *is*, *f*.  
 clothing, }  
 cock, *gallus*, *ī*.  
 cold (adj.), *frigidus*, *a*, *um*.  
 color, *color*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 come, *venire*, 120, 4; come up, *accidere*, 114, 2; come back, *redire*, 149; come down, *dēscendere*, 114, 1; come together, *convenire*.  
 comfort, *commodum*, *ī*.  
 compassion, *miserericordia*, *ae*.  
 complaint, *querēla*, *ae*.  
 conceive, *concipere*, 112, 1.  
 confide, *cōfidere* (w. Abl. and Dat.), *fisus sum*.  
 conquer, *vincere*, 113, *superāre*.

consul, *cōsul*, *is*.  
 consult, *cōsultare*.  
 corpse, *cadāver*, *is*, *n*.  
 country, *terra*, *ae*; (native land) *patria*, *ae*; (opposed to town) *rūs*, *rūris*; (district) *regiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 countryman, *rūsticus*, *ī*.  
 cow, *vacca*, *ae*.  
 crack, *rīma*, *ae*.  
 cradle, *cūnae*, *arum*, *pl*.  
 crane, *grūs*, *gruis*, *f*.  
 cross over, *trānsire*, 149, *trānjicere*, 113.  
 cruel, *crūdilis*, *e*. [*māre*.  
 cry to, cry out, *clāmāre*, *exclācuckoo*, *cuculus*, *ī*.  
 cunning, *callidus*, *a*, *um*.  
 cup, *pōculum*, *ī*.  
 cut (fell), *caedere*, 115.

## D.

Dance, *sallāre*.  
 danger, *periculum*, *ī*.  
 dare, *audere*; Perf., *ausus sum*.  
 Darius, *Dārēus*, *ī*.  
 daughter, *filia*, *ae*.  
 day (opposed to night), *diēs*, *diēi*, *c*; (opp. to darkness), *lux*, *lucis*, *f*.  
 dead, *mortuus*, *ī*; dead body, *cadāver*, *is*, *n*.  
 deal (blows), *infligere*, 113, 2.  
 dear, *cārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 death, *mors*, *tis*, *f*. [112, 1.  
 deceive, *fallere*, 115; *dicipere*,  
 deep, *altus*, *a*, *um*; *profundus*, *a*, *um*.  
 defend, *dēfendere*, 114, 1.  
 defile, *foedāre*.  
 deliver (free), *liberāre*.  
 demand to, *postulāre*, *flāgitāre*.  
 deny, *negāre*. [*dere*, 114, 2.  
 depart, *proficisci*, 136, 3; *discēdeprive*, *privāre*.  
 despair, to be in despair, *dēspērāre*.  
 destroy, *dilēre*.  
 determine, *cōstituere*, 115.  
 devour, *dēvorāre*.  
 die, *mori*, *mortuus sum*.  
 difficult, *difficilis*, *e*.  
 dine, *cēnāre*.  
 dinner, *cēna*, *ae*.  
 displease, *displicere* (with Dat.).

distance at a, *procul*.  
 divide, *dīvidere*, 114, Exc.  
 do, *agere, facere*, 113; do wrong,  
*peccāre*.  
 dog, *canis, is, c.*  
 donkey, *asinus, ī*.  
 door, *ostium, ī; j̄anua, ae.*  
 down (from), *dē* (w. Abl).  
 dragon, *dracō, īnis, m.*  
 draw, *trahere*, 113, 3; *dūcere*, 113,  
 2; (water) *haurire*, 120, 4; draw  
 out, *extrahere*.  
 drinking-cup, *pōculum, ī*.  
 drive away, off, *pellere*, 115; *abi-*  
*gere*, 113; drive out, *expellere*.  
 driver, *auriga, ae.*  
 drown, *suffocāre*.  
 duty, *officium, ī*.

## E.

Each, *quisque*; (of two) *uterque*;  
 (one at a time) *singuli*.  
 ear, *auris, is, f.*  
 early (in the morning), *māne*.  
 earth, *terra, ae.*  
 easy, *facilis, e*; adv., *facile*.  
 Egypt, *Aegyptus, ī, f.*  
 either—*or, aut—aut*.  
 elder, *māior (nātū)*.  
 eldest, *maximus (nātū)*.  
 endeavor, *operam dare*, 115.  
 endure, *tolerāre, perferre*, 150.  
 enemy (public), *hostis, is, c.*; (in  
 heart), *inimicus, ī*.  
 enter, *intrāre, inīre*, 149; enter  
 on, *ingredi* (w. Acc.), 136, 3.  
 envy, feel envy, *invidēre* (w. Dat.),  
 120, 2.  
 Epirus, *Ēpirus, ī, f.*  
 equal, adj., *pār, p̄aris*.  
 err, *errāre*.  
 error, *error, ōris, m.* [2].  
 escape, *effugere*, 113, *evādere*, 114,  
 every, *omnis, e*; every day, *quoti-*  
*dīe*; everything, *omnia*.  
 evil, *malus, a, um*; subst., *malum, ī*.  
 excel, *excellere, uī, sum* (w. Dat.).  
 exclaim, *exclāmāre*.  
 exclude, *exclūdere*, 114, 2.  
 extol, *praedicāre*.  
 extract, *extrahere*, 113, 3.

## F.

Fagot, *fascis, is, m.*  
 faithful, *fidēlis, e*.  
 fall, *cadere*, 115.  
 famous, *clārus, a, um*.  
 farewell, *valē, pl. valēte*.  
 farmer, *agricola, ae.*  
 father, *pater, tris*; fathers (ances-  
 tors), *māiores, pl.*  
 fatigue, *fatigāre*.  
 fear, *metus, ūs, m.*; *timor, ōris, m.*  
 fear to, *timēre, metuere*, 115. [pl.  
 feast, *convivium, ī*; *epulae, ūrum*,  
 feather, *penna, ae.*  
 feed to (act.), *pascere, pāvī, pastum*;  
 (intrans.), *pasci, vesci*, 136, 3.  
 feel, *sentire*, 120, 4.  
 fellow, *homō, īnis*.  
 fidelity, *fidēs, eī, f.*  
 field, *ager, agrī*.  
 fight to, *pūgnāre*.  
 filch, *surripere*, 112, 1.  
 first, *primus, a, um*.  
 fit, *aptus, a, um*; *idōneus, a, um*.  
 flatter, *blandiri* (w. Dat.).  
 flatterer, *assentātor, ōris*.  
 flee, flee from, *fugere*, 113.  
 fleet, *classis, is, f.*  
 flesh, *carō, carnis, f.*  
 flight, put to, *fugāre*.  
 flog, *verberāre*.  
 flower, *flōs, ōris, m.*  
 fly, *musca, ae.*  
 fly to, *volāre*; fly away, *avolāre*.  
 fondle, *dēmulcēre, mulsi, mulsum*.  
 food, *cibus, ī*.  
 fool (subst.), *fatuus, ī, stultus, ī*.  
 fool to, *lūdificārī, lūdere*, 114, 2.  
 foolish, *stullus, a, um*.  
 foot, *pēs, pedis, m.*  
 foot-soldier, *pedes, itis*.  
 for, *enim*, (postpositive), *nam*.  
 force, *cōgere*, 113, 1. [Dat.).  
 forest, *silva, ae.* [Dat.).  
 forgive, *ignōscere, nōvī, nōtum* (w.  
 fortune, *fortūna, ae.*  
 found, *condere*, 115.  
 fountain, *fōns, tis, m.*  
 four, *quattuor*.  
 fox, *vulpēs, is, f.*, *vulpēcula, ae.*  
 free to, set free, *liberāre*.  
 friend, *amicus, ī*.



frighten, *terrere, perterrere*.  
frog, *rāna, ae*.  
from, *ā (ab), de, ē (ex)*, w. Abl.

## G.

Gate, *porta, ae*.  
Gaul, *Gallia, ae*.  
general, *imperātor, ōris*.  
gift, *donum, ī*.  
girl, *puella, ae*.  
give, *dare, 115*; *dōnāre, praebere*;  
give way, *cedere, 114, 2* (w. Dat.).  
glad, *laetus, a, um*.  
gnat, *culex, icis, m.* [2; *abire*.  
go, *ire, 149*; go off, *discedere, 114*.  
goat (she), *capella, ae*.  
God, *deus, ī*.  
goddess, *dea, ae*.  
golden, *aureus, a, um*.  
goldfinch, *acanthis, idis, f*.  
good, *bonus, a, um*; *probus, a, um*.  
good, to do good to, *prōsurī* (w. Dat.).  
goose, *anser, is, m*.  
grant, *concēdere, 114, 2*.  
grateful, *grātus, a, um*.  
great, *māgnus, a, um, ingēns, tis*;  
greatest, *maximus*; so great, *tantus*.

Greece, *Graecia, ae*.  
Greek, *Graecus, a, um*. [humī.  
ground, *humus, ī, f.*, on the ground,  
guard to, *custōdīre*.  
guest, *conviva, ae, c*.

## H.

Hand, *manus, ūs, f*.  
hand down, *trādere, 115*.  
hang (act.), *suspendere, 115*; (intrans.), *pendere, 120, 2*.  
happy, *felix, icis*; *beātus, a, um*.  
harbor, *portus, ūs*.  
hard (difficult), *difficilis, e*.  
hare, *lepus, oris, m*.  
harmony, *concordia, ae*.  
hasten, *festināre, properāre*.  
haughty, *superbus, a, um*.  
have, *habere*.  
hawk, *accipiter, tris, m*.  
head, *caput, ūtis, n*.  
health, *valētūdō, inis, f*.

hear, *audire*.  
heavy, *gravis, e*.  
help, *auxilium, ī*; come to help, *auxiliō venire, subvenire, 120, 4*.  
help to, *juvare, adjuvare* (w. Acc.).  
Hercules, *Hercules, is*.  
high, *altus, a, um*; high seas, *altum, ī*. [bere.  
hold, *tenere, habere*; hold out, *praehome, domus, ūs, f*; at home, *domi*; from h., *domō*; home, *domum*.  
Homer, *Homērus, ī*.  
honest, *probus, a, um*.  
hope, *spēs, eī, f*.  
hope to, *spērare*.  
horn, *cornū, ūs, n*.  
horse, *equus, ī*.  
horseman, *eques, itis*.  
hour, *hōra, ae*.  
house, *domus, ūs, f*.  
how, *quī. quōmodo, quam, ut*.  
human, *hūmānus, a, um*.  
hunger, *famīs, is, f*.  
hunter, *venator, ōris*.  
hurt to,  
hurtful, to be, } *nocere* (w. Dat.).  
husband, *vir, ī*.

## I.

I, *ego*.  
if, *sī*.  
ignorant to be, *nescire*.  
Ilium, *Īlium, ī*.  
imitate, *imitari*.  
immense, *immēnsus, a, um*.  
immediately, *statim*.  
impudent, *impudēs, tis*.  
in (prep.), *in*, with Abl.  
India, *India, ae*.  
injure, *nocere* (w. Dat.).  
insert, *inserere, scrui, sertum*.  
into (prep.), *in*, w. Acc.  
invoke, *invocare*.  
Iphigenia, *Īphigenia, ae*.  
island, *insula, ae*.  
Italy, *Italia, ae*.

## J.

Jackdaw, *graculus, ī*.  
join, *jungere, 113, 2*; join battle, *proelium committere, 114, 2*.



joy, *gaudium*, *ī*.  
 judge (subst.), *jūdex*, *icis*.  
 judge to, *jūdicāre*.  
 Juno, *Jūnō*, *ōnis*.  
 Jupiter, *Jūppiter*, *Jovis*.  
 just, *jūstus*, *a*, *um*.

## K.

Keen, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācere*.  
 keep, *servāre*, *custōdīre*; keep from,  
 away, *prohibēre*.  
 keeper, *custōs*, *ōdis*, *c*.  
 kid, *capella*, *ae*.  
 kill to, *interficere*, 113, 1, *occidere*,  
 115, *exanimāre*, *nequere*.  
 kind (subst.), *genus*, *eris*, *n*. [*um*.  
 kind, *benevolus*, *a*, *um*, *benignus*, *a*,  
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*.  
 kingdom, *rēgnum*, *ī*.  
 knock (at), *pulsāre*.  
 know, *scīre* (of things); *nōscere*,  
*cōgnōscere*, 115; not to know,  
*ignōrāre*, *nēscīre*.

## L.

Labor, *labor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 Lacedaemonian, *Lacō*, *ōnis*. [*ae*.  
 land, *terra*, *ae*; (native land) *patria*,  
 language, *sermō*, *ōnis*, *m*.  
 lantern, *lucerna*, *ae*. [*māgnus*.  
 large, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*; very l., *per-*  
*late* (too), *sērō*.  
 laugh to, laugh at, *ridēre* (w. Acc.).  
 lay, lay down, *pōnere*, *dēpōnere*,  
 115.  
 laziness, *pigrītia*, *ae*. [*um*.  
 lazy, *piger*, *gra*, *grum*, *īgnāvus*, *a*,  
 lead to, *dūcere*, *agere*, 113.  
 leap, leaping (subst.), *saltus*, *ūs*.  
 leap to, *saltāre*.  
 learn, *discere*, 115.  
 leave, *relinquere*, 113, 1.  
 leg, *crūs*, *crūris*, *n*.  
 lend, *praebere*.  
 length (at), *tandem*.  
 liberty, *libertās*, *ātis*, *f*.  
 lick, *lambere*.  
 lie to, *jacere*; lie back (recline), *re-*  
*cumbere*, 120, 3.  
 lie, to tell a, *mentīrī*.  
 life, *vīta*, *ae*.

like (adj.), *similis*, *e*.  
 lion, *leō*, *ōnis*, *m*.  
 listen, *auscultāre*.  
 little, *parvus*, *a*, *um*; poor little,  
*parvulus*, *a*, *um*.  
 live, *vivere*, 113, 3; (dwell), *habitāre*.  
 living (alive), *vivus*, *a*, *um*.  
 load, *onus*, *eris*, *n*.  
 lofty, *excelsus*, *a*, *um*, *altus*, *a*, *um*.  
 log, *lignum*, *ī*.  
 long (adj.), *longus*, *a*, *um*.  
 long (adv.), a long time, *diū*.  
 lose, *amittere*, 114, 2, *perdere*, 115.  
 loud, *clārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 love to, *amāre*, *diligere*, 113, Exc.  
 lying, *mendāx*, *ācis*.

## M.

Magistrate, *magistrātus*, *ūs*.  
 magnificent, *māgnificus*, *a*, *um*.  
 maid, *virgō*, *inis*, *puella*, *ae*; maid  
 (servant), *ancilla*, *ae*.  
 make, *facere*, 113, *creāre*.  
 man, *homō*, *inis* (human being), *c*; *vir*, *ī* (opp. to woman).  
 mangle, *dilaniāre*.  
 many, *multī*; very-many, *plūrimī*.  
 market-place, *forum*, *ī*.  
 marry to, (*uxōrem*) *dūcere*, 113, 2  
 (of the man); *virō nubere*, 112, 2  
 (of the woman).  
 marsh, *palūs*, *ūdis*, *f*.  
 master, *dominus*, *ī*, *eris*, *ī*; *magi-*  
*ster*, *trī* (teacher).  
 maul, *mulcāre*.  
 meadow, *pratūm*, *ī*.  
 memory, *memoria*, *ae*.  
 mention, *mentiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 mind, *animus*, *ī*; *mēns*, *tis*, *f*.  
 mindful, *memor*, *orīs*.  
 mine, *meus*, *a*, *um*.  
 miserable, *miser*, *a*, *um*.  
 misery, *miseria*, *ae*.  
 money, *pecūnia*, *ae*.  
 monkey, *simius*, *ī*.  
 most (adv.), *maximē*.  
 mother, *māter*, *tris*.  
 mouse, *mūs*, *muris*, *m*.; little m.,  
*māsculus*, *ī*.  
 mouth, *os*, *ōris*, *n*.  
 move, *movēre*, 120, 2; move up,  
*admovēre*.

much (adj.), *multus, a, um*; (adv.), *multum*; so much (adv.), *adeo*.  
murder, *interficere*, 113, 1, *juguläre*.  
my, *meus, a, um*.

## N.

Naked, *nūdus, a, um*.  
name, *nōmen, inis, n*.  
nation, *nātiō, ōnis, f*.  
native-land, *patria, ae*.  
necessity, *necessitās, ātis, f*.  
Nero, *Nerō, ōnis*.  
never, *nunquam*.  
new, *novus, a, um*.  
news, *nūntius, ī*.  
nightingale, *lusciniā, ae*.  
no, no one (adj.), *nullus, a, um*;  
(subst.), *nēmō, inis*.  
nobody, *nēmō, inis*.  
noise, *sonus, ī*.  
none, *nullus, a, um* (85).  
nose, *nāsus, ūs*.  
not, *nōn*; not at all, *nihil*.  
nothing, *nihil*.  
now, *nunc, jam*.  
number, *numerus, ī*.

## O.

Obey, *oboedire, pārere* (w. Dat.).  
often, *saepe*.  
old, *vetus, eris*; *antiquus, a, um*;  
older, *māior nātū*; oldest, *maximus nātū*.  
old age, *senectūs, ūtis, f*.  
old man, *senex, is*.  
on account of, *propter*, w. Acc.  
on (prep.), *in* (w. Abl.).  
once upon a time, *olim, aliquando*.  
one, *ūnus, a, um*, 85.  
only, *sōlus* (85), *unicus, a, um*;  
(adv.), *tantum, modo, solum*.  
or, *aut, vel*.  
orator, *orātor, ōris*.  
order, *ordō, inis, m.*; (command)  
*imperium, ī, jussum, ī*.  
order to, *imperāre*, w. Dat., *jubere*, w. Acc., 120, 2.  
other, *alius*; (of two) *alter* (85).  
ought (l), *dēbere*.

our, *nōster, tra, trum*; our (men,  
people), *nōstrī, ūrum*. [1.  
overcome, *superāre, vincere*, 113,  
owe, *dēbere*.  
own, *suus, a, um*.

## P.

Pain, *dolor, ōris, m*.  
pardon, *ignōscere, nōvī, nōtum*, (w.  
Dat.) *veniam dare*, 115.  
parent, *parēns, tis, c*.  
part (subst.), *pars, tis, f*.  
partnership, *societās, ātis, f*.  
path, *via, ae*.  
peace, *pāx, pācis, f*.  
peacock, *pāvō, ōnis, m*.  
peasant, *agricola, ae, rŭsticus, ī*.  
pelt, *petere*, 120, 3.  
people, *hominēs, um*.  
perceive, *intellegere*, 113, Exc., *animadvertere*, 114, Exc., *sentire*, 120, 4.  
perform, *perficere, cōficere*, 113,  
*patrāre, pruestāre*, 115.  
perhaps, *fortasse*.  
perish, *perire*, 149.  
person, *homō, inis, c*.  
persuade, *persuādere*, 120, 2.  
philosopher, *philosophus, ī*.  
Phrixus, *Phrixus, ī*.  
Phylax, *Phylax, ācis*.  
picture, *pictūra, ae, tabula (picta), imāgō, inis, f*.  
pierce to, *perforāre*.  
plan, *cōsiliū, ī*.  
play to, *ludere*, 114, 2.  
please, *placere* (w. Dat.).  
plunge, *dēmergere*, 113, 2.  
poem, *carmen, inis, n*.  
poet, *poeta, ae, c*.  
poison, *venēnum, ī*.  
pollute, *focdāre*.  
poor (needy), *pauper, is, inops, is*;  
(wretched), *miser, a, um*, (often  
by diminutive) poor old, *vetulus,*  
*a, um*; poor little, *parvulus, a,*  
*um*.  
poverty, *inopia, ae*.  
praise, *laus, dis, f*.  
praise to, *laudāre*.  
precept, *praeceptum, ī*.  
preserve, *servāre*.

press to, *premere*, 115.  
 prince, *princeps*, *is*.  
 proclaim, *praedicāre*.  
 promise (subst.), *prōmissum*, *ī*.  
 promise to, *prōmittere*, 114, 2,  
*pollicērī*, 136, 2.  
 propose, *prōponere*, 115.  
 protect, *tuērī*, 136, 2, *prōtegere*,  
 113, Exc.  
 punishment, *poena*, *ae*.  
 puppy, *catulus*, *ī*. [Gen.  
 purpose, for the p. of, *causā*, w.  
 put, *pōnere*, 115; put on, *impōnere*;  
 put to flight, *fugāre*.  
 Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus*, *ī*.

## Q.

Quarrel, *rixārī*.  
 queen, *rēgina*, *ae*. [quiunt.  
 quoth (he), *inquit*; say they, *in-*

## R.

Race, *genus*, *eris*, *n*.  
 raise, *tollere*, 115. [tūre.  
 read to, *legere*, 113; (aloud) *reci-*  
*readily*, *facile*.  
 receive, *accipere*, 112, 1; (as a  
 guest), *excipere*.  
 reconcile, *reconciliāre*.  
 refresh, *recreāre*.  
 refuse, *recūsāre*.  
 region, *regiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 rejoin, *subjiō*, 113, 1.  
 relieve to, *levāre*.  
 remember, *memoriā tenēre*, *tenēre*.  
 reply, *respondere*, 120, 2.  
 restore, *restituere*, 115; (harmony)  
*reconciliāre*.  
 return (give back), *reddere*, 115,  
*restituere*, 115; (go, come back),  
*redire*, 149; return thanks, *grā-*  
*tias agere*, 113, 1.  
 revile, *vituperāre*.  
 reward (subst.), *praemium*, *ī*.  
 Rhodes, *Rhodus*, *ī*, *f*.  
 Rhodian, *Rhodus*, *a*, *um*.  
 rich, *dives*, *itis*.  
 river, *fluvius*, *ī*.  
 road, *viā*, *ae*.  
 robber, *praedō*, *ōnis*.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus*, *a*, *um*.

run to, *currere*, 115; *fugere*, 113,  
 1; to run up, *accurrere*, run  
 away, *effugere*.  
 runaway, *fugitivus*, *a*, *um*.

## S.

Sacrifice, *immolāre*.  
 sad, *tristis*, *e*, *maestus*, *a*, *um*.  
 safe, *tūtus*, *a*, *um*.  
 sage, *sapiēns*, *ntis*, *m*.  
 sailor, *nauta*, *ae*, *m*.  
 Sallust, *Sallustius*, *ī*.  
 same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.  
 saucy, *petulāns*, *tis*. [um.  
 savage (adj.), *atrōx*, *ōcis*; *ferus*, *a*,  
 save, *servāre*. [over, *dictitāre*.  
 say, *dicere*, 113, 2; say over and  
 scholar, *discipulus*, *ī*.  
 school, *schola*, *ae*.  
 Scipio, *Scipiō*, *ōnis*.  
 scold to, *vituperāre*.  
 scratch (up), *rādere*, 114, 2.  
 Scythia, *Scythia*, *ae*.  
 Scythian, *Scythia*, *ae*, *c*.  
 sea, *mare*, *is*, *n*.; seaside, *litus*  
*maris*; high sea, *altum mare*.  
 seek, *quaerere*, *petere*, 120, 3.  
 see, *videre*, 120, 2; (visit) *visitāre*.  
 seem, *vidērī*, 136, 2.  
 seize, *corripere*, 112, 1.  
 Seneca, *Seneca*, *ae*.  
 send, *mittere*, 114, 2.  
 serpent, *serpens*, *tis*, *c*.  
 servant, *servus*, *ī*, *famulus*, *ī*.  
 set, *pōnere*, 115; set free, *liberāre*.  
 set out, *proficiscī*, 136, 3.  
 shameless, *impudēns*, *tis*.  
 sheep, *ovis*, *is*, *f*.  
 shepherd, *pāstor*, *ōris*.  
 ship, *nāvis*, *is*, *f*.  
 shipwreck, *nafragium*, *ī*.  
 shore, *litus*, *oris*, *n*.  
 shoulder, *umerus*, *ī*.  
 shout, *clāmāre*. [1.  
 show to, *mōnstrāre*, *ostendere*, 114,  
 sick, *aeger*, *gra*, *gram*, *aegrōtus*, *a*,  
*um*. [tis, *f*.  
 side, *latus*, *eris*, *n*.; (party), *pars*,  
 silly, *īnsulsus*, *a*, *um*.  
 singing, *cantus*, *ūs*.  
 sister, *soror*, *ōris*.  
 size, *māgnitūdō*, *inis*, *f*.

slave, *servus*, *ī*.  
 slave, be a slave to, *servire* (w. Dat.).  
 sleep to, *dormire*.  
 slender, *gracilis*, *e*.  
 sly, *callidus*, *a*, *um*. [*um*.]  
 small, *parvus*, *a*, *um*, *exiguus*, *a*,  
 snake, *serpens*, *tis*, *c.*, *anguis*, *is*,  
*c.*, *coluber*, *brī*, *m*.  
 snare, *laqueus*, *ī*.  
 so, *ita*, *sic*.  
 so much, *tantus*, *a*, *um*.  
 so that, *ut*, *w*. Subj.  
 soldier, *miles*, *itis*. [See 129.]  
 some, *aliquis*, *quidam*; *nōnulli*.  
 son, *filius*, *ī*.  
 son-in-law, *gener*, *ī*.  
 song (singing), *cantus*, *ūs*; (poem)  
*carmen*, *inis*, *n*.  
 soon, *brevi*, *cito*.  
 soothe, *permulcere*, *mulsi*, *mulsum*.  
 sour (tempered), *mōrosus*, *a*, *um*.  
 spare, *parcere* (w. Dat.), 115.  
 sparrow, *passer*, *is*, *m*.  
 speak, *loqui*, 136, 3, *dicere*, 113, 2.  
 spectator, *spectator*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 spider, *aranea*, *ae*.  
 splinter, *stirps*, *is*, *f*.  
 squabble to, *rixari*.  
 stab to, *perforare*.  
 stag, *cervus*, *ī*.  
 stand to, *stare*, 115.  
 starling, *sturnus*, *ī*.  
 state (commonwealth), *rēs pūblica*,  
 Gen., *rei pūblīcae*.  
 stick, *bacillum*, *ī*; (log), *lignum*, *ī*.  
 stick to, *haerere*, 120, 2.  
 stork, *ciconia*, *ae*.  
 storm, *tempestas*, *ātis*, *f*.  
 storm to, take by storm, *expugnare*.  
 story, *fābula*, *ae*.  
 stranger, *hospes*, *itis*, *m*.  
 strong, *validus*, *a*, *um*.  
 suffer, *pati*, 136, 3.  
 suppliant (adj.), *supplex*, *icis*.  
 suppose, *putare*.  
 surpass, *superare*.  
 surround to, *cingere*, 113, 2.  
 suspicion, *suspiciō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 swamp, *palus*, *ūdis*, *f*.  
 sweet, *dulcis*, *e*, *suavis*, *e*.  
 swift, *celer*, *is*, *e*; *vēlox*, *ōcis*.  
 swim, *natāre*.

## T.

Take, *sūmere*, 115, *capere*, 112, 1;  
 take away, *adimere*, *tollere*, 115;  
 take (captive), *capere*.  
 teach, *docere*.  
 teacher, *magister*, *trī*. [113, 2.]  
 tell (a story), *narrare*; *dicere*.  
 than, *quam*. [125.]  
 that, *is*, *ille*, *iste*. See 124 and  
 that, so that, in order that, *ut*, *w*.  
 Subj.  
 then, *tum*.  
 thief, *fūr*, *fūris*.  
 thing, *rēs*, *reī*. [120, 4.]  
 think, *putare*, *iudicare*, *sentire*,  
 this, *hīc*, 125.  
 Thracian, *Thrāx*, *ācis*.  
 throat, *guttur*, *is*, *n*.  
 throne, *rēgnum*, *ī*.  
 through, *per* (w. Acc.).  
 throw, *jacere*, 113, 1; throw down,  
*deicere*.  
 thy, *tuus*, *a*, *um*.  
 tie to, *annectere*, 113, 2.  
 time, *tempus*, *ōris*, *n*.  
 timid, *timidus*, *a*, *um*.  
 to, *ad*, *in* (w. Acc.).  
 toil (subst.), *labor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 toil to, *laborare*.  
 toils (snare), *laquei*, *ōrum*, *pl*.  
 tongue, *lingua*, *ae*.  
 too-much, *nimius*, *a*, *um*; (adv.)  
*nimum*, *nimis*.  
 tooth, *dēns*, *tis*, *m*. [ciāre.]  
 torture, *torquere*, 157, 2, Exc., *cru-*  
 touch to, *tangere*, 115, *attingere*.  
 tower, *turris*, *is*, *f*.  
 traveller, *viator*, *ōris*.  
 treasure, *thēsaurus*, *ī*.  
 treaty, *foedus*, *eris*, *n*.  
 tree, *arbor*, *ōris*, *f*.  
 tribe, *gēns*, *tis*, *f*.  
 troublesome, *molestus*, *a*, *um*.  
 Troy, *Trōja*, *ae*.  
 try, *tentare*, *cōnari*.  
 turn, *vertere*, 114, Exc.; (change)  
*mūtare*; turn over, *ēvertere*.  
 two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, 140.

## U.

Unburied, *inhumatus*, *a*, *um*.



undertake, *suscipere*, 112, 1, *sūmere*, 115.

unfortunate, *infelix, icis*.

unhappy, *infelix, icis*.

unwilling to be, *nolle*, 152.

urge, *suadere*, 120, 2.

useful, *utilis, e*; very useful, *perutilis, e*.

## V.

Vain, *vānus, a, um*; in vain, *frustrā*.

victory, *victōria, ae*.

vigorously, *acriter*.

violent, *vehemens, tis*.

virgin, *virgō, inis, f*.

voice, *vōx, vōcis, f*.

vow, *vovēre*, 120, 2.

vulture, *vultur, is, m*.

## W.

Wait (for), *expectare*.

walk to, *ambulare*.

wall, *mūrus*; (of a city) *moenia, um, pl*.

want (subst.), *inopia, ae*.

war, *bellum, ī*.

warn, *monere, admonere*.

water, *aqua, ae*.

we, *nōs*.

weary to, *fatigare*.

weary (adj.), *fessus, a, um, fatigatus, a, um*.

weep, *lacrimare, flere*.

weigh down to, *gravare*. [*bene*.

well (adj.), *sānus, a, um*; (adv.),

when, *cum*; (interrog.), *quandō*.

whence, *unde*.

whether, *num*, 131.

which (rel. and interrog.), *quī*; (of the two), *uter*.

while, a little w., *paulisper*.

while (conj.), *dum*.

who (rel.), *quī*; (interrog.), *quis* (subst.), *quī* (adj.).

whole, *tōtus, a, um*, 85; whole-world, *orbis terrarum*.

why? *cūr?*

wicked, *malus, a, um, improbus, a, um*.

wife, *uxor, ōris*. [*fera, ae*.

wild, *ferus, a, um*; wild beast,

will, willing be, } *velle*, 152.

willingly, *libenter*.

wine, *vīnum, ī*.

winter, *hiems (hiemps), hiemis, f*.

wise, *sapiens, tis, prudens, tis*. [3.

wish to, *velle, optare, cupere*, 120,

wolf, *lupus, ī*.

woman, *mulier, is*; *fēmina, ae*.

wood (forest), *silva, ae*; (log), *lignum, ī*.

wooden, *lignus, a, um*.

work, *opus, eris, n*.

world, *mundus, ī*; *orbis terrarum*.

worn out, *cōnfectus, a, um*.

would that, *utinam*, 92, 3.

wound (subst.), *vulnus, eris, n*.

wound to, *vulnerare*.

wretched, *miser, a, um*.

write, *scribere*, 112, 2; write in, *inscribere in*.

wrong, do w., *peccare*.

## Y.

Year, *annus, ī*.

yield to, *cedere* (w. Dat.), 114, 2.

you, *vōs*. [*minimus nātū*.

younger, *minor nātū*; youngest,

youth (young man), *juvenis, is*; (period of life), *juventus, utis, f*.



Abbe L Waterhouse  
S au Bern  
Gal.

## NOTE TO TEACHERS.

THE classification of declensions according to stem-characteristics is the only scientific method, and is destined to displace the old plan, even in elementary books. In dictionaries and vocabularies the declensions may still be designated by *-ae* for the First, *-ī* for the Second, *-is* for the Third, *-ūs* for the Fourth, *-ei* for the Fifth, and to this extent the tradition has been followed in the present series. But this rough method of recognizing declensions cannot be used for exhibiting the formation without serious damage, practical as well as scientific.

I. The Genitive of the First Declension ends in *-ae*.

The stem ends in *a*, the genitive in *-e*, which stands for an earlier *ī*. So in old Latin: *Albāi Longāi = Albae Longae*. Compare the Greek First Declension (A- Declension). The stem, then, is not *mens-* but *mensa-*.

II. The Genitive of the Second Declension ends in *-ī*.

*o* has been dropped before *i*. The stem is not *hort-*, but *horto-*. So in the Nominative in older Latin: *servō-s*. Compare the Greek Second Declension (O- Declension), *λόγος*.

III. The Genitive of the Third Declension ends in *-is*.

This rule breaks down in the vowel stems in *i*, for the stem of *collis* is not *coll-* but *colli-*.

IV. The Genitive of the Fourth Declension ends in *-ūs*.

The stem is not *fruct-*, but *fructu-*; *uis* being contracted into *ūs*. Observe the obscuration of the connection with the Third Declension.

V. The Genitive of the Fifth Declension ends in *-ei*.

But *ei* does not determine the declension unless the Nominative is stated, as *rei* may come from stem *reo-* (Nom. *reus*), as well as from stem *re-* (Nom. *rēs*), to say nothing of such figments as *r-eī*, *sp-eī*.

From such considerations it would appear that the true way is, after all, the short way, or, to adapt a familiar line,

ἀπλοῦς ὁ μῦθος τῆς ἀληθείας ἔφω.

B. L. G.

**ONE MONTH USE**

PLEASE RETURN TO DESK  
FROM WHICH BORROWED

**EDUCATION-PSYCHOLOGY  
LIBRARY**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.

1-month loans may be renewed by calling **642-4209**  
Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior  
to due date.

**ALL BOOKS ARE SUBJECT TO RECALL 7 DAYS  
AFTER DATE CHECKED OUT.**

MAY 6 1973

REC'D APR 6 '78 4 PM

LD 21A-30m-5,'75  
(S5877L)

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley

*Berkeley*

*red mandarin*

*hi*

*clay*

San Bernardino Academy.

Leopold Bolwell C. S. Bolwell.

Miss L. F. Bodwell.

Anna Waterman  
Berkeley  
California

Anna

O. C. Bodwell



avolare

C. S. B. C. S. B.

Anna C. Waterman

Anna C. Waterman

Mrs. R. W. Waterman

92 Hyde Street

Mrs. Victoria

Berkeley  
California

San Francisco  
California

Saw

Anna G. Waterman

